

# **MY18 ZB Commodore**

## **Owner's Manual**



**Holden**

GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232, Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (hereinafter Holden)

### **Change of name, address or ownership**

If you drive a pre-owned Holden, have moved house or changed any of your details, we'd like to hear from you!

Holden uses your details to keep your vehicle's factory provided Roadside Assistance and Warranty details up to date.

It also helps us let you know if there is an existing rework action required on your vehicle. To update your details, please take a few minutes to fill in and mail the form at the back of the Service & Warranty Booklet or visit Holden's website at: [www.holden.com.au/forms/change-of-owner-details](http://www.holden.com.au/forms/change-of-owner-details)

GM Holden Ltd (Holden) is collecting the new owner's personal information in order to process the request for transfer for the specified vehicle. We may disclose your personal information to our related companies and third parties who provide us with (or help us provide) products and services, including to overseas locations such as the USA, and other countries in Europe, Oceania and Asia. Holden's privacy policy (available at: [www.holden.com.au/privacypolicy](http://www.holden.com.au/privacypolicy)) states how you can seek to access or correct any personal information Holden holds about you, how to complain about a privacy breach by Holden and how Holden will deal with a privacy complaint. You can contact Holden on 1800 033 349 or alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at: [holdencustomer-care@gm.com](mailto:holdencustomer-care@gm.com)

**Note:** Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

Printed in Australia

**Part No. 92509024**

August 2018

(MY18 ZB Commodore. Print 3)

© 2018 GM Holden Ltd.

© 2018 Holden New Zealand Ltd.

Reproduction in whole or part is

prohibited without written approval from

GM Holden Ltd., ABN 84 006 893 232 (Australia) or

Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (New Zealand)

---

# Contents

Introduction .....	2
In Brief .....	5
Keys, Doors, and Windows .....	20
Seats and Restraints .....	48
Storage .....	79
Instruments and Controls .....	91
Lighting .....	131
Infotainment System .....	142
Climate Controls .....	233
Driving and Operating .....	241
Vehicle Care .....	319
Service and Maintenance .....	378
Technical Data .....	380
Customer Information .....	390
Index .....	394

# Introduction

We thank you for choosing Holden and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your driving pleasure and satisfaction.

This owner's manual applies to the current ZB Commodore vehicle. Therefore, due to different models and options, you may find reference in this manual to some equipment not fitted to your own vehicle.

Please note that all information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest production information available at the time of printing.

Holden reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

## Introduction

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.


## Using this Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant.**
- The In Brief section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each chapter shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.


- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- For a complete list of the registered trademarks contained in this manual *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ 390

## Danger, Warning, and Caution

### Danger

Text marked  **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

### Warning

Text marked  **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

## Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

## Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⇨.

This indicates 'see page'.



## In Brief

### Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview ..... 6

### Initial Drive Information

Initial Drive Information ..... 8

Stop/Start System ..... 8

Vehicle unlocking ..... 8

Remote Start ..... 8

Seat Adjustment ..... 9

Head Restraint Adjustment .... 12

Seat Belts ..... 12

Mirror Adjustment ..... 13

Steering Wheel Adjustment .... 13

Exterior Lighting ..... 14

Horn ..... 15

Washer and Wiper Systems ... 15

Climate Controls ..... 16

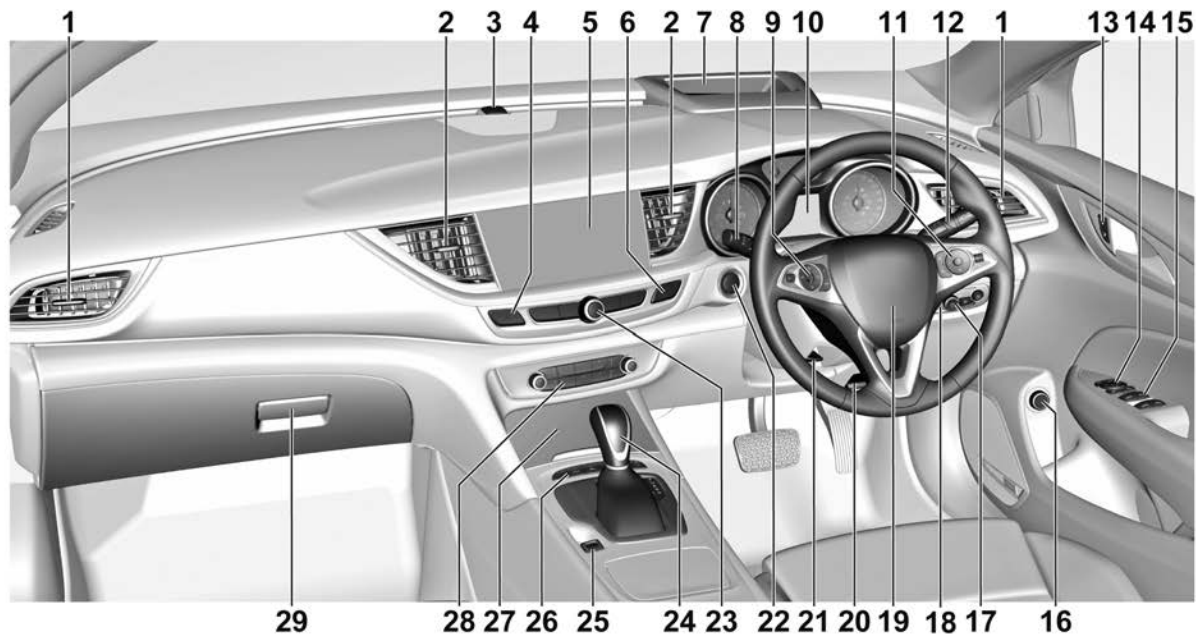
Transmission ..... 17

Parking ..... 17

Getting Started ..... 18

## Instrument Panel

### Instrument Panel Overview





1. Side air vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* ⇨ 239.
2. Centre air vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* ⇨ 239.
3. Light sensor. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ 133.
4. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ 137.
5. Infotainment display. See *Introduction* ⇨ 143 or *Introduction* ⇨ 172.
6. *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ 263.  
*Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 264.
7. *Head-Up Display (HUD)* ⇨ 121.
8. *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ 93.
9. *Cruise Control* ⇨ 282.  
*Speed Limiter* ⇨ 285.  
*Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ 286.  
*Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ 293.
10. *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ 99.
11. *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 115.
11. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ 92.
12. Turn signal lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ 137.  
Low/high beam. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ 131.
13. Door locks. See *Door Locks* ⇨ 26.
14. *Power Mirrors* ⇨ 40.
15. *Power Windows* ⇨ 43
16. Power tailgate switch. See *Tailgate* ⇨ 31.
17. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ 131.  
*Front Fog Lamps* ⇨ 137.  
*Headlamp Leveling Control* ⇨ 136.  
*Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ 138.
18. Head-up display control. See *Head-Up Display (HUD)* ⇨ 121.
19. *Horn* ⇨ 93.
20. Bonnet release. See *Bonnet* ⇨ 322.
21. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ 92.
22. ENGINE START/STOP button. See *Power Button* ⇨ 243.
23. Infotainment controls. See *Introduction* ⇨ 143 or *Introduction* ⇨ 172.
24. Shift lever. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ 254.
25. *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ 261.
26. Sport/VXR mode. See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ 265.  
*Parking Assist* ⇨ 275.  
*Advanced Parking Assist* ⇨ 278.  
*Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ 306.  
*Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ 246.
27. *Storage Compartments* ⇨ 79.
28. *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ 233.
29. Glovebox. See *Storage Compartments* ⇨ 79.

## Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may be fitted to your vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner's manual.

## Stop/Start System


The vehicle has a fuel saving engine Stop/Start system to shut off the engine (perform an Auto Stop) and help conserve fuel and reduce emissions when the vehicle is at a standstill, e.g. at traffic lights.

When conditions allow, the vehicle is at a complete stop and the brake pedal is pressed, the engine may turn off.


When the brake pedal is released or the accelerator pedal is pushed, the engine will restart. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ 246.

## Vehicle Unlocking



Press  to unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door. Open the doors by pulling the handles.


To open the tailgate, push the brand emblem (Liftback) or touchpad under the tailgate moulding (Sportwagon, Tourer).

Press  to lock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ 21, *Door Locks* ⇨ 26, *Tailgate* ⇨ 31.



## Remote Start

Remote vehicle start allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

The remote vehicle start button  is on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

### Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote vehicle start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing step 2, press and hold  for at least four seconds or until the hazard warning lights flash.

The hazard warning lights flashing confirms the request to start the vehicle remotely has been received.

The engine starts, the doors will remain locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. The remote vehicle start can be extended.

4. To enter the vehicle, unlock the doors.
5. If the engine is running when you enter the vehicle: Press the brake pedal and press the Engine Start/Stop button before moving the shift lever out of **P**.
6. If the engine is not running when you enter the vehicle: Start the engine normally. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 244.

See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ 25.

## Seat Adjustment

### Manual Seats

#### Longitudinal Adjustment



Lift the handle, slide the seat to the desired position then release the handle.

Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

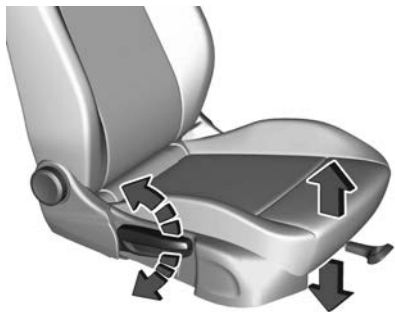
#### Backrest Inclination



Turn the hand-wheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

## 10 In Brief

### Seat Height



Move the lever in a pumping motion:  
up : seat higher  
down : seat lower

### Seat Inclination



Press the switch:  
top : front end higher  
bottom : front end lower  
See *Seat Adjustment* ⇨ 52.

### Power Seats

#### Longitudinal Adjustment



Move the switch forward/backward.

**Seat Height**

Move the switch upward/downward.

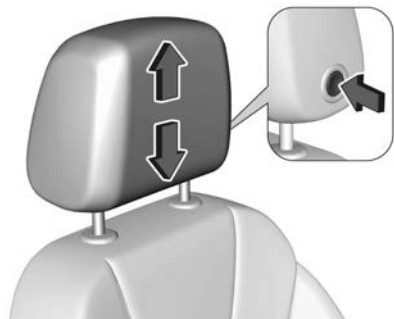
**Seat Inclination**

Tilt the front of the switch upward/downward.

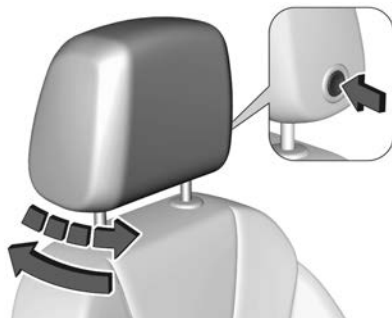
**Backrest Inclination**

Tilt the switch forward/backward.  
See *Seat Adjustment* ⇨ 52.

## Head Restraint Adjustment



Press the release button, adjust the height and engage.



Press the release button, pull the head restraint forwards slowly. It engages in several positions.

See *Head Restraints* ⇨ 48.

## Seat Belts



Pull the metal tongue across your body and clip it into the buckle.

The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips and fit comfortably. Any extra belt length retracts automatically.

To unfasten, press the red button on the belt buckle.

See *How to Wear Seat Belts Properly* ⇨ 64.

## Mirror Adjustment

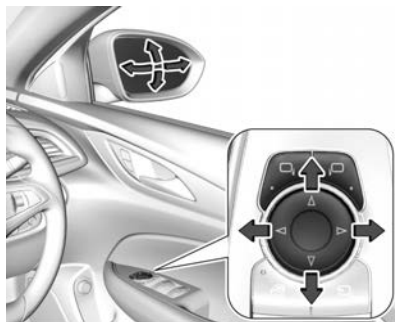
### Interior Mirror




To adjust the mirror, move the mirror housing in the desired direction.

See *Manual Rearview Mirror* ⇨ 42,  
*Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*  
⇨ 42.

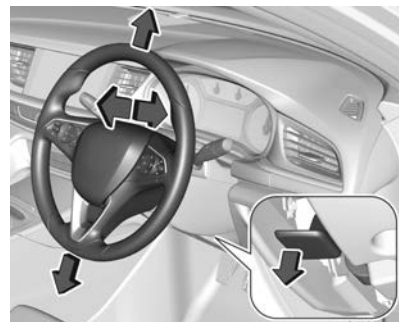
### Exterior Mirrors



Select the relevant exterior mirror by pushing  for the left or right mirror. Press the control to adjust the selected mirror in the desired direction.

See *Power Mirrors* ⇨ 40.

## Steering Wheel Adjustment



Unlock the lever below the steering column. Adjust the steering wheel and then engage the lever. Ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

See *Steering Wheel Adjustment*  
⇨ 92.


## Exterior Lighting


### Light Control Switch



Turn the light control switch:

**AUTO** : Automatic light control, switches automatically between daytime running lights and headlights

 : Park, tail and rear number plate lamps

 : Headlamps and all park lamps


See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ 131.

### High and Low Beam, Headlamp Flash



Push the turn signal lever to change from low to high beam.

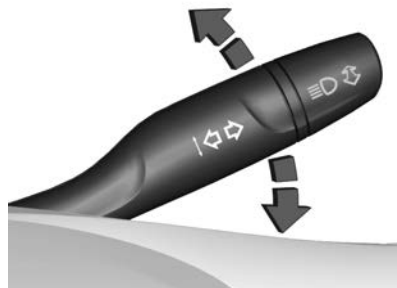
Pull the lever to deactivate high beam.

High beam is indicated by  on the instrument cluster.

To activate the headlamp flash, pull the turn signal lever and release. The headlamps will remain on for as long as the lever is pulled.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ 132.

### Turn Signals




**Lever up** : Left turn signal

**Lever down** : Right turn signal

See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ 137.

### Hazard Warning Flashers

Operated by pressing .






See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ 137.

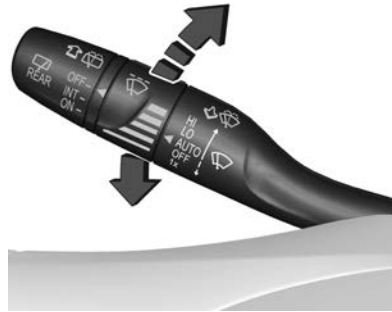
## Horn



Press .

## Washer and Wiper Systems

### Windscreen Wiper



**HI** : fast

**LO** : slow

**AUTO** : automatic wiping with rain sensor

**OFF** : off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

See *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ 93.

### Windscreen Washer



Pull the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper operates a few times.

See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ 335.

### Rear Window Wiper (Sportwagon, Tourer)



Turn the outer cap to activate the rear window wiper:

**OFF** : off

**INT** : intermittent operation

**ON** : continuous operation

See *Rear Window Wiper/Washer (Sportwagon, Tourer)* ⇨ 95

### Rear Window Washer (Sportwagon, Tourer)



Push the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper operates a few times.






See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ 335.

### Climate Controls Controls



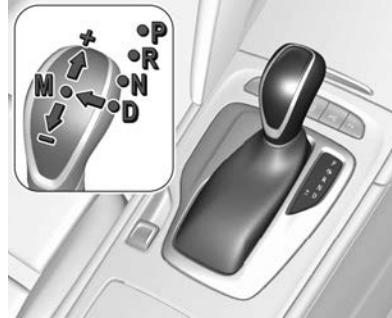
Depending on vehicle model, the following features may be available:

- Control dial for driver temperature adjustment.
- Control dial for front passenger temperature adjustment.
- **CLIMATE** : Enters the Climate Setting menu in the infotainment display.
- ☼ or ☾ : Fan speed increase or decrease.

- **ON/OFF** : Turns the climate control system on or off.
- **AUTO** : Automatic mode.
-  : Manual air recirculation.
-  **MAX** : Windscreen demisting and defrosting.
-  **REAR** : Heated rear window and exterior mirrors.
-  : Heated seats.
-  : Ventilated seats.

See *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ 233, *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ 45, *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ 58, *Heated Rear Seats* ⇨ 63, *Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ 58.

## Transmission



- P** : Park position
- R** : Reverse gear
- N** : Neutral
- D** : Automatic mode
- M** : Manual mode
- +** : Upshift in manual mode
- : Downshift in manual mode

The shift lever is locked in **P** and can only be moved when the ignition is on, the release button on the shift lever is pushed and the brake pedal is applied.


See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ 254.

## Parking

1. Apply the electric park brake. Check the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.
2. Select **P** (Park).
3. Close all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off, remove the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and exit the vehicle.

### Note

For vehicles with a turbocharger: After running at high engine speed or with high engine loads, allow the engine to idle in **P** or **N** for approx. 30 seconds before turning off. This will help protect the turbocharger.

5. Press the  button on the RKE transmitter, or press the lock/unlock button on a door handle (with the RKE transmitter within 1 m of the door handle) to lock all doors.

### Note

The engine fan may keep running for several minutes after the ignition has been turned off. This is normal.

### Warning

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gases are hazardous, especially if they concentrate in closed rooms.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space such as a closed garage or underground car park.

## Getting Started

### Before Driving Off

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.

See *Seat Position* ⇨ 50.

3. Adjust the rear view mirrors.

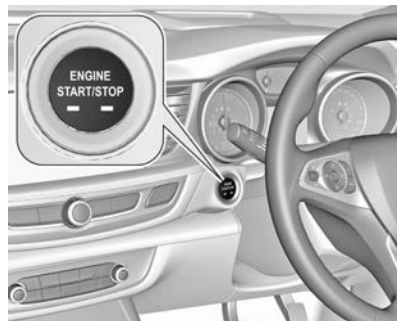
See *Power Mirrors* ⇨ 40.

4. Fasten the seat belts.

See *Three-Point Seat Belt* ⇨ 65.

5. Check the instrument cluster indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on and go off once the engine is started. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ 99.

## Starting the Engine



Press the brake pedal and move the shift lever to **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral).

Do not operate the accelerator pedal.

Press ENGINE START/STOP briefly: an automatic starter control procedure operates with a short delay until the engine is running.

To turn the engine off when vehicle is stationary, press ENGINE START/STOP briefly. Apply the parking brake and engage **P**.

See *Power Button* ⇨ 243, *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 244.

## Stop-start System



The stop-start system helps to save fuel and reduce the exhaust emissions.

When conditions allow, it performs an Autostop and turns off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light. The ignition remains on.

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer. After restarting, the engine speed is indicated.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ 246.

## Keys, Doors, and Windows

### Keys and Locks

Keys .....	20
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System .....	21
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation .....	21
Remote Vehicle Start .....	25
Door Locks .....	26
Safety Locks .....	30

### Doors

Tailgate .....	31
----------------	----

### Vehicle Security

Immobiliser .....	39
-------------------	----

### Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors .....	40
Power Mirrors .....	40
Folding Mirrors .....	40
Heated Mirrors .....	41
Automatic Dimming Mirror .....	41
Reverse Tilt Mirrors .....	41

### Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror .....	42
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror .....	42

### Windows

Windows .....	42
Power Windows .....	43
Heated Rear Window .....	45
Sun Visors .....	45

### Roof

Sunroof .....	45
---------------	----

## Keys and Locks

### Keys

Handle the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

#### Note

Do not put the RKE transmitter in the load compartment.

#### Replacement Transmitters

Two RKE transmitters are supplied with the vehicle.

The key number is specified on a detachable tag. The key number must be quoted when ordering a replacement transmitter as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ 21, *Door Locks* ⇨ 26, *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 244.

## Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

Do not make changes or modifications to the RKE system.

Window tinting may reduce the operating range of the RKE transmitter.

If there is a decrease in the operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer for service.

See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 244.


## Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation







**Lock:** Press to lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door.

If the driver's door is not closed, the central locking system will not operate. A horn chirp will sound to alert you.

**Unlock:** Two unlocking modes are available:

- All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door will be unlocked by pressing  once.

- Only the driver's door and fuel filler door will be unlocked by pressing  once. To unlock all remaining doors and the tailgate, press  once more.



Additionally if equipped, pressing and holding  or :

- for one second folds the exterior mirrors in or out. See *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ 40.
- for more than two seconds closes or opens the power windows, and closes the sunroof if equipped. See *Power Windows* ⇨ 43 or *Sunroof* ⇨ 45.

Some of these settings can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

**Remote vehicle start:** Press to start the engine from outside the vehicle. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ 25.

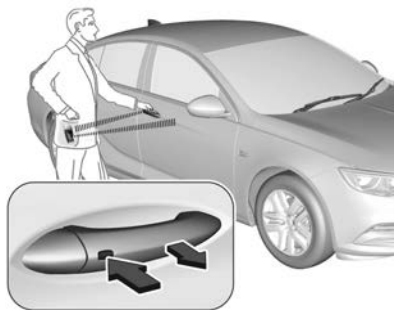
## 22 Keys, Doors, and Windows

 **Power tailgate:** Press twice to open or close the power tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate,  must be pressed slightly longer than for door locking and unlocking.

### Confirmation

Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning lights flashing. This setting must first be activated in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

### Keyless Entry Operation



The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle and within a radius of approx. one metre from the door in question or the tailgate.

### Unlocking



Press the button on the exterior door handle and pull the handle.

Two unlocking modes are available:

- All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door are unlocked by pressing the button on the exterior handle once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler door are unlocked by pressing the button on the driver's door exterior handle



once. To unlock all remaining doors and the tailgate, press the button once more.

This setting can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

**Locking**



Press the button on any exterior door handle. All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door will be locked.

The system locks if any of the following occurs:

- It has been more than five seconds since unlocking.

- The button on an exterior handle has been pressed twice within five seconds to unlock the vehicle.
- Any door has been opened and all doors are now closed.

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the RKE transmitter remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more RKE transmitters in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the doors will be locked even if just one transmitter is taken out of the vehicle.

**Unlocking and Opening the Tailgate**

The tailgate can be unlocked and opened by pushing the brand emblem (Liftback) or the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding (Sportwagon, Tourer) when the RKE transmitter is in range.

For vehicles with a power tailgate, it can also be opened hands-free by moving your foot below the rear bumper. If the doors have not been unlocked, they will remain locked. See *Tailgate* ⇨ 31.

**Battery Replacement**

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced. The need for battery replacement is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).



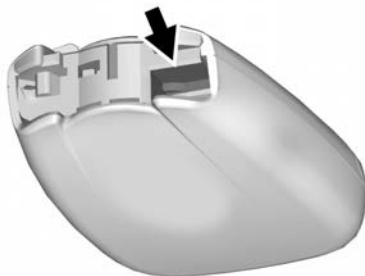
Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

## 24 Keys, Doors, and Windows

To replace:



1. Press the button on the side of the RKE transmitter and remove the mechanical key from the housing.



2. Insert the key blade again approx. 6 mm and turn the key to open the housing. Take care, as inserting the key blade further than this can damage the housing.



3. Remove and replace the battery. Use a CR2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Close the housing and insert the key blade.

### Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in RKE transmitter.
- RKE transmitter is out of reception range.

- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals. The power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the RKE transmitter or use the mechanical key to unlock the doors, see *Door Locks* ⇨ 26.

### Memorised Settings

Whenever the ignition is switched off, the following settings are automatically memorised by the RKE transmitter:

- Automatic climate control.
- Lighting.
- Infotainment system.
- Door locking system.
- Sport mode settings.
- Comfort settings.

This is set for each RKE transmitter. The saved settings are automatically used the next time the ignition is turned on with the applicable memorised transmitter.


A precondition is that Personalisation by Driver is activated in the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

The status change is available only after locking and unlocking the vehicle.

For vehicles with memory power seats, the assigned memory position of the power seat is automatically recalled when switching the ignition on and Auto Memory Recall is activated in the infotainment system for the memorised RKE transmitter. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ 56 or *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

### Remote Vehicle Start



Remote vehicle start allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

The remote vehicle start button  is on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start and if the vehicle has heated seats, they may come on during a remote start. See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ 58 and *Heated Rear Seats* ⇨ 63.

### Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote vehicle start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing step 2, press and hold  for at least four seconds or until the hazard warning lights flash.

The hazard warning lights flashing confirms the request to start the vehicle remotely has been received.

## 26 Keys, Doors, and Windows

The engine starts, the doors will remain locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. The remote vehicle start can be extended, see “Extending Engine Run Time” below.

4. To enter the vehicle, unlock the doors.
5. If the engine is running when you enter the vehicle: Press the brake pedal and press the Engine Start/Stop button before moving the shift lever out of P.

If the engine is not running when you enter the vehicle: Start the engine normally. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 244.

### Extending Engine Run Time

To extend the remote vehicle start run-time to 20 minutes, repeat steps 1-3 while the engine is still running. The remote start can be extended once.


For example, if the engine has been running for five minutes and the remote vehicle start time is extended, the engine will run for a total of 20 minutes.

A maximum of two remote vehicle starts, or a single start with an extension, is allowed between ignition cycles.

The ignition must be turned on and then back off before the remote vehicle start procedure can be used again.

### Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote vehicle start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold .
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Turn the ignition on and then off.

### Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Operate

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if:

- The RKE transmitter is in the vehicle.
- The vehicle is unlocked.
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning lights are on.
- The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) in the instrument cluster is on.

## Door Locks



### Danger

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all

(Continued)



**Danger (Continued)**

passengers should wear seat belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.

- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop the vehicle. Locking the doors can help prevent this from happening.

There are several ways to lock and unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.



From the outside:

- Press  or  on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.
- Press the lock/unlock button on an outside door handle when the RKE transmitter is within one metre of the door.
- Press the brand emblem (Liftback) or the touchpad under the tailgate moulding (Sportwagon, Tourer) when the RKE transmitter is within one metre of the tailgate. If the doors are locked, this will only unlock and open the tailgate.
- Using the mechanical key in the driver's door lock.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ 21, *Tailgate* ⇨ 31 or "Operation with the Mechanical Key" below.

From the inside:



- Operate the central locking buttons:
  - Press  to lock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door. An LED illuminates.
  - Press  to unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.
- Pull the interior handle twice.

## 28 Keys, Doors, and Windows

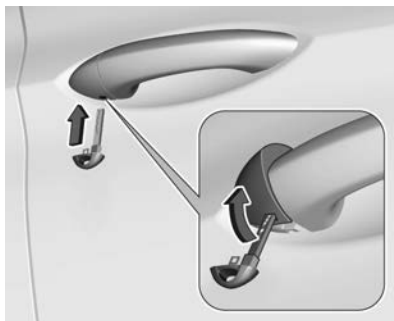
### Operation with the Mechanical Key

In case of a fault, such as the vehicle battery or RKE transmitter battery being flat, the driver's door can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.



Push the button on the RKE transmitter and remove the mechanical key.

The lock cylinder in the driver's door is covered by a cap.




Insert the mechanical key blade into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upward.

### Manual Unlocking



Manually unlock the driver's door by inserting the mechanical key into the lock cylinder and turning anti-clockwise.


If there is vehicle power, all other doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler door can be unlocked by pressing  in the driver's door central locking buttons.

Alternatively, the other doors can be opened individually by pulling the interior handle twice. If there is no vehicle power, the tailgate and fuel filler door cannot be unlocked.

### Manual Locking



If there is vehicle power:

- Close all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door, and lock the vehicle from outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder clockwise.
- Alternatively, close the tailgate, fuel filler door and all doors except the driver's door, and press  in the driver's door central locking buttons. Then close the driver's door and lock it

from the outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder clockwise.

If there is no vehicle power, push the inside locking knob of each door except the driver's door. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder clockwise.

**Important:** If there is no vehicle power, the fuel filler door and tailgate cannot be locked if they were unlocked.



After locking, replace the lock cylinder cap: Insert the cap with the lower side in the recesses, swivel and push the cap until it engages at the upper side.

### Automatic Locking

This security feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door when the shift lever is moved out of P (Park).

When the shift lever is moved into P (Park), the vehicle will be unlocked automatically.

Activation or deactivation of automatic locking can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

### Automatic Relock After Unlocking

This feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door a short time after unlocking with the RKE transmitter, provided no door has been opened.

## 30 Keys, Doors, and Windows

Activation or deactivation of automatic locking can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.



### Passive Locking

This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if a RKE transmitter has been recognised previously inside the vehicle, all doors have then been closed and the RKE transmitter does not remain within the vehicle.

If the RKE transmitter is in the vehicle or if the ignition is not off, passive locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more RKE transmitters in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the feature locks the vehicle if just one RKE transmitter is taken out of the vehicle.

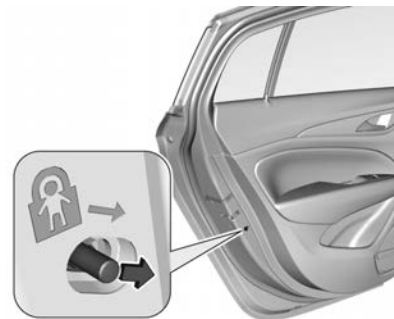
To prevent passive locking of the vehicle, e.g. when refuelling or if passengers remain in the vehicle, the system must be disabled.

To disable the system, press the driver's door central locking button  for a few seconds while one door is open. An acoustic signal sounds three times to confirm deactivation. The function remains disabled until the central locking button  is pressed or the ignition is switched on.

Activation or deactivation of passive locking can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126. The setting can be saved for each RKE transmitter being used.

## Safety Locks

### Child Safety Locks



Child safety locks help prevent the rear doors being accidentally opened by small children in the vehicle.

Open the rear door and move the pin to the front position. The door cannot be opened from inside.

To deactivate, move the pin to the rear position.



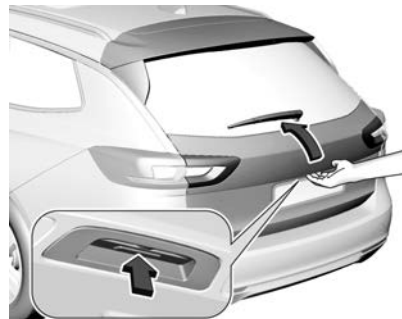
**⚠ Warning**

For safety, always check the lock is operating correctly (after setting) by trying to open the door from inside the vehicle.

**Doors****Tailgate****Opening****Liftback**

Push the brand emblem and open the tailgate:

- After unlocking the doors, or
- With the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

**Sportwagon, Tourer**

Push the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding and open the tailgate manually:

- After unlocking the doors, or
- With the RKE transmitter within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ 21.

## 32 Keys, Doors, and Windows

### Warning

To prevent dangerous exhaust fumes entering the vehicle, close the tailgate when the engine is running. If it is necessary to leave the tailgate open (while carrying bulky cargo) close all windows, switch heater controls to 'fresh' and set fan to highest speed.

### Closing



Use the interior handle to close the tailgate until it drops under its own weight.

### Warning



To avoid injury and/or damage to the vehicle, before closing the tailgate check the contact area is unobstructed.



### Power Tailgate

### Warning

Do not touch any vehicle parts below the vehicle during hands-free operation. There is a risk of injury from hot engine parts.

The power tailgate can be operated by:

- Pressing  twice on the RKE transmitter. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate,  must be pressed longer than during door locking or unlocking.

- The touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding and  on the inside of the open tailgate.
- The operation mode switch  on the inside of the driver's door.
- Hands-free operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper.

The tailgate can only be operated when the vehicle is stationary, with shift lever in P and with the operation mode switch not in the OFF position. The hazard warning lights flash and a chime sounds while the power tailgate is operating.

### Note

Operating the power tailgate does not operate the central locking system. To open the tailgate with the button on the RKE transmitter, or with the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding, or via hands-free operation, it is not necessary to unlock the vehicle.



The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle, within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

Do not leave the RKE transmitter in the load compartment.

Lock the vehicle after closing if it was unlocked previously.

### Operation with the RKE Transmitter




Press  twice to open or close the tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate,  must be pressed longer than during door locking or unlocking.

### Operation with the Touchpad Switch



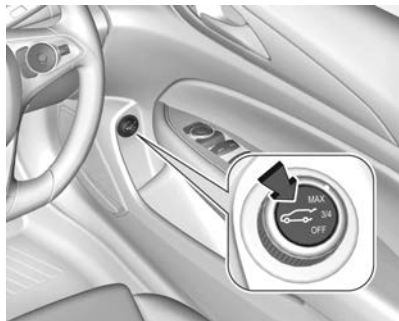
Press the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding until the tailgate starts to move. If the vehicle is locked, the RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle, within approx. one metre of the tailgate.




To close, press  on the inside of the open tailgate until the tailgate starts to move.

## 34 Keys, Doors, and Windows

### Operation with the Driver's Door Switch



Press  on the operation mode switch inside the driver's door until the tailgate starts to open or close.

### Hands-free Operation



To open or close the tailgate with the hands-free feature, move your foot back and forth below the rear bumper in the area where the image is projected on the ground.

#### Note

If the vehicle is fitted with a towbar, the image position will be towards the left.


Do not move your foot from side to side, hold your foot still or move too slowly below the bumper.

The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

When foot motion is being detected by the sensor, the system actuates the tailgate after a short delay.

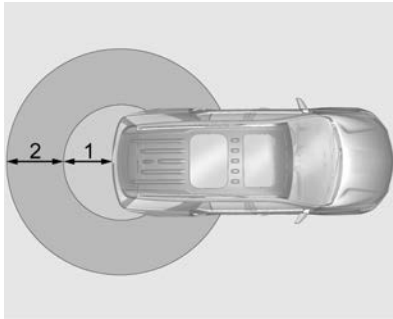
#### **Warning**

Do not touch any vehicle parts below the vehicle during hands-free operation. There is a risk of injury from hot engine parts.

Settings for the hands-free operation can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation*  126.

#### **Projected Image**

An image will be projected for one minute onto the ground near the rear bumper when an RKE transmitter is detected within approximately two metres of the rear of the vehicle.



1. One Metre Hands-Free Operation Detection Zone
2. Two Metre Projected Image Detection Zone

The projected image shows where the foot motion is to take place. The projected image will only be available for this RKE transmitter after it has been out of range for at least 20 seconds. If an RKE transmitter is again detected within approximately two metres of the tailgate, or another hands-free operation has been detected, the one-minute timer will be reset.

The projected image will not work under these conditions:

- The vehicle battery voltage is low.
- The transmission is not in P (Park).
- Hands-free tailgate control is set to OFF in vehicle personalisation.
- The power tailgate operation mode switch is turned off.
- The vehicle remains parked for 72 hours or more, with no RKE transmitter use or keyless entry operation. To re-enable, press any button on the RKE transmitter or open and close a door.

The projected image will not operate for a single RKE transmitter when a transmitter:

- Has been left within approximately 5 metres of the tailgate for several minutes.
- Has been left inside the vehicle and all doors are closed.
- Has approached the area outside the tailgate five times within 10 minutes.


## 36 Keys, Doors, and Windows



### Hands-free Tailgate and Projected Image Availability

Action	Hands-free Tailgate	Projected Image
RKE transmitter within detection zone.	Operative	On for 1 minute
RKE transmitter left inside detection zone for minimum 10 minutes.	Operative	On for 1 minute. Off until RKE button press or a door is opened and closed
RKE transmitter brought in and out of detection zone 5 times within 10 minutes.	Operative	On for 1 minute. Off for 1 hour or until RKE button press or door is opened and closed
Vehicle remains parked for more than 72 hours.	Operative	Off
Vehicle battery is low.	Non-operative	Off
Transmission is not in P (Park).	Non-operative	Off
Power tailgate is turned off.	Non-operative	Off
Hands-free tailgate is disabled.	Non-operative	Off

#### Stop or Change Direction of Movement


To stop movement of the tailgate immediately:

- press  once on the RKE transmitter, or

- press the touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding, or
- press  on the inside of the open tailgate, or
- press  on the operation mode switch inside the driver's door.

Pressing one of the switches again will reverse the direction of movement.

### Operation Modes

The power tailgate has three modes of operation, which are controlled by the operation mode switch  on the inside of the driver's door.



To change the mode, turn the switch:

- Normal mode MAX: The power tailgate opens to full height.
- Intermediate mode 3/4: The power tailgate opens to a reduced height that can be adjusted.

- Off: The tailgate can only be operated manually.


### Adjusting Reduced Opening Height in Intermediate Mode

The height the tailgate automatically stops at can be adjusted to allow for low overhead objects such as a garage door, etc.

1. Turn the operation mode switch inside the driver's door to 3/4.
2. Open the power tailgate using any operation switch.
3. Stop the movement at the desired height by pressing any operation switch.

If required, manually move the stopped tailgate to the desired position.



4. Press and hold the button  on the inside of the open tailgate for three seconds.

A chime sound indicates the new setting has been recorded and the hazard warning lights will flash.

### Note

- Adjusting opening height should be programmed at ground level.
- The reduced height can only be set at an opening angle of above 30°.

## 38 Keys, Doors, and Windows

When the operation mode switch is set to intermediate mode 3/4, the power tailgate will stop opening at the newly set position.

The tailgate can only be held open if a minimum height is exceeded (minimum opening angle from 30°). The opening height cannot be programmed below that height.


### Safety Function

If the power tailgate encounters an obstacle during opening or closing, the direction of movement will automatically be reversed slightly.

Multiple obstacles in one power cycle will deactivate tailgate operation. In this case, close or open the tailgate manually.

The power tailgate has pinch sensors on each side edge. If the sensors detect obstacles between the tailgate and body, the tailgate will open, until it is activated again or closed manually. The safety function is indicated by a warning chime.

Remove all obstacles before resuming normal power operation.

If the vehicle is equipped with a genuine Holden towbar and a trailer is electrically connected, the power tailgate can only be opened with the touchpad switch or closed with  in the open tailgate.

Ensure there are no obstacles in the movement area.

### Overload

If the power tailgate is repeatedly operated at short intervals, the power operation function may be temporarily disabled. Move tailgate manually into its end position to reset the system.

### General Hints for Tailgate Operation

#### Warning

To prevent dangerous exhaust fumes entering the vehicle, close the tailgate when the engine is

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

running. If it is necessary to leave the tailgate open (while carrying bulky cargo) close all windows, switch heater controls to 'fresh' and set fan to highest speed.

### Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check for overhead obstructions such as a garage door, etc., to avoid damage to the tailgate.

Always check the movement area above and behind the tailgate.

### Note

- The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.




- The operation of the power tailgate is disabled under low vehicle battery conditions. In this case, the tailgate may not even be manually operable.
- With the power tailgate disabled and all doors unlocked, the tailgate can only be operated manually. In this event, manually closing the tailgate requires significant force.
- At low outside temperatures, the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this event, lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.


## Vehicle Security

### Immobiliser

The immobiliser is activated automatically once the ignition is turned off.

If the instrument cluster control indicator  flashes when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system and the engine cannot be started.

Switch off the ignition and repeat the start attempt. If required, retry with the RKE transmitter placed in the centre console transmitter pocket. See *Power Button* ⇨ 243.

If the control indicator  continues flashing, attempt to start the engine using another RKE transmitter.

Seek the assistance of your dealer.

### Note

- Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags such as security passes, etc. may cause interference with the RKE transmitter. Do not have them placed near the transmitter when starting the vehicle.
- The immobiliser does not lock the doors. You should always lock the vehicle after leaving it.

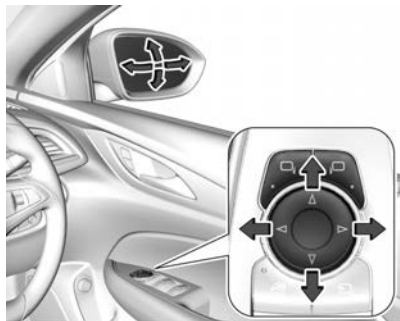
### Exterior Mirrors



#### Convex Mirrors

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Symbols for the side blind zone alert are displayed in the mirrors. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ 303.

#### Power Mirrors



Select the relevant exterior mirror by pushing  for the left mirror or  for the right mirror. An LED in the button indicates the selection.

Press the control to adjust the selected mirror in the desired direction.

#### Folding Mirrors




For safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force.


Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.


#### Electric Folding



The vehicle may have electric folding mirrors.



Push . Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Push  again to return both exterior mirrors to their original position.

If an electrically folded mirror is manually folded, pushing  will only electrically fold the other mirror.

## Folding Mirrors with RKE Transmitter




If equipped, press  again after locking the doors for one second to fold in the mirrors. Press  again after unlocking for one second to fold out mirrors.

This function can be activated or deactivated, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126. The settings are automatically stored for the RKE transmitter being used, see *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ 21.

## Heated Mirrors



Operated together with heated rear window by pressing  REAR. An LED in the button illuminates.

Heating will operate with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

## Automatic Dimming Mirror

The vehicle may have an automatic dimming mirror. Glare from following vehicles at night is reduced by automatically dimming the exterior mirror on the driver's side.

## Reverse Tilt Mirrors

For vehicles with memory seat function, the exterior mirrors are automatically tilted down toward the rear tyres when reverse gear is selected as a parking aid. This function may be disabled if a trailer is attached.

See *Memory Seats* ⇨ 56.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

## Interior Mirrors

### Manual Rearview Mirror



To reduce glare from following vehicles at night, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

#### Note

The rear view clarity is reduced when the mirror is set to the anti-glare position.

Return the mirror back to its original position as soon as there is no longer any glare.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror



The vehicle may have an automatic dimming rear view mirror. Glare from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.

## Windows

For vehicles with an automatic dimming interior mirror, do not attach stickers or similar to the windshield in the area of the interior mirror. Otherwise the detection zone of the sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

### Windscreen Replacement

#### Caution

If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately. Otherwise, these systems may not operate correctly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour/or messages from these systems.

**Caution**

If the vehicle is equipped with a Head-up display, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately. Otherwise, the system may not operate correctly and the image may look out of focus.

**Power Windows**

**Warning**

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seat, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

The power windows can be operated when the ignition is on, or in retained accessory power mode. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ 245.



The vehicle has express up/down power windows for all doors. Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: The window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: The window moves up or down automatically with the safety function enabled.

To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

**Safety Function**

If the window glass encounters resistance during automatic closing above approx. half way, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

**Override**



In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, turn the ignition on, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without the safety function enabled while the switch is being operated.

To stop movement, release the switch.

## 44 Keys, Doors, and Windows

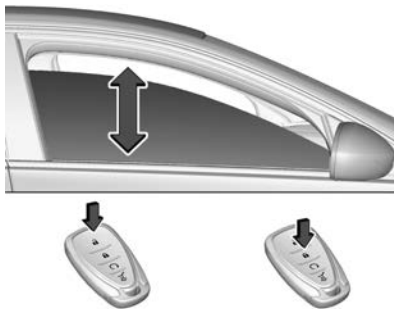
### Child Safety System for Rear Windows





Press  to deactivate the rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press  again.

### Operating Windows from Outside

If equipped, the windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold  for more than two seconds to open the windows.

Press and hold  for more than two seconds to close the windows. Release the button to stop window movement. If the windows are fully opened or closed, the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

This function can be activated or deactivated, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

### Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, window operation may be disabled for some time.

### Initialising the Power Windows


If the windows cannot be closed automatically, such as after disconnecting the vehicle battery, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close the doors.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. Push the switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
4. Pull a power window switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.

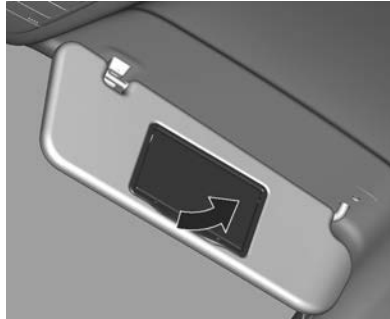
## Heated Rear Window



Operated together with heated exterior mirrors by pressing  REAR. An LED in the button illuminates.

Heating will operate with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

## Sun Visors



The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent glare.

To view the vanity mirror, lift the cover from the lower edge. Lamps illuminate when the cover is opened. The mirror covers should be closed when driving.

A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

## Roof

### Sunroof

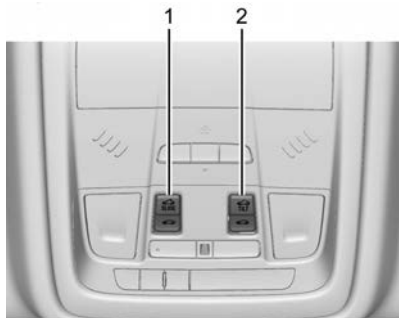
#### Warning

Take care when operating the sunroof. There is a risk of injury, particularly to children.



Keep a close watch on the moving parts when operating the sunroof. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.



The sunroof can be operated when the ignition is on, or in retained accessory power mode. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ 245.

### Liftback





#### Open or Close

Press  or  (1) gently to the first detent: The sunroof is opened or closed as long as the switch is operated.

Press  or  firmly to the second detent then release: The sunroof is opened or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

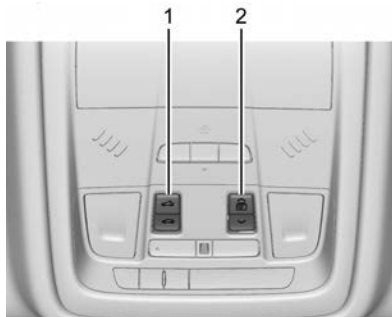
#### Raise or Close

Press  or  (2) : The sunroof is raised or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled.



#### Sunblind



The sunblind can be manually operated. Close or open the sunblind by sliding. When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

#### Sportwagon, Tourer





#### Open or Close

Press  or  (1) gently to the first detent: The sunroof is opened or closed as long as the switch is operated.

Press  or  firmly to the second detent then release: The sunroof is opened or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

#### Power Sunshade


Press  ^ (2) to open the power sunshade. Press  to close the power sunshade.

#### General Hints

##### Safety Function

If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

##### Safety Function Override

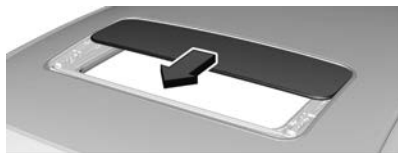
In the event of closing difficulties, e.g. due to frost, hold the switch  pressed to the second detent.




The sunroof closes with safety function disabled while the switch is held. To stop movement, release the switch.

### Closing the Sunroof from Outside

The sunroof can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold  for more than two seconds to close the sunroof.

This function is linked to the Remote Window Operation setting in the infotainment system Settings menu, and can be activated or deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

### Initialising the Sunroof

After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the sunroof to a limited extent. Have the system initialised by your dealer.

## Seats and Restraints

### Head Restraints

Head Restraints .....	48
-----------------------	----

### Front Seats

Seat Position .....	50
Seat Adjustment .....	52
Memory Seats .....	56
Front Seat Armrest .....	57
Ventilated Front Seats .....	58
Heated Front Seats .....	58
Massage .....	59

### Rear Seats

Rear Seats .....	60
Rear Seat Armrest .....	63
Heated Rear Seats .....	63

### Seat Belts

How to Wear Seat Belts	
Properly .....	64
Three-Point Seat Belt .....	65
Seat Belt Use During	
Pregnancy .....	66
Seat Belt Care .....	67
Replacing Seat Belt System	
Parts after a Crash .....	67

### Airbag System

Airbag System .....	67
Front Airbag System .....	68
Side Airbag System .....	69
Curtain Airbag System .....	70
What Will You See after an	
Airbag Inflates? .....	71
Notices for Customer Installed	
Equipment .....	71
Airbag System Check .....	71
Replacing Airbag System Parts	
after a Crash .....	71

### Child Restraints

Older Children .....	72
Infants and Young Children ....	72
Child Restraint Systems .....	73
Where to Put the Restraint ....	75
Top Tether Anchor Fittings ....	76
Child Restraint Installation	
Locations .....	76
ISOFIX Child Restraint	
Systems .....	76

### Pedestrian Protection System

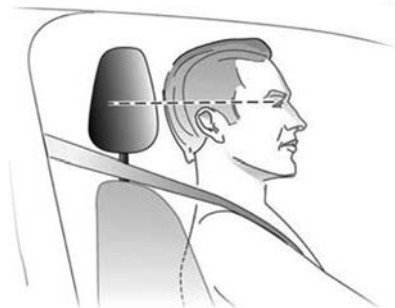
Pedestrian Protection	
System .....	77

## Head Restraints

### Warning

The head restraint is a safety feature.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.

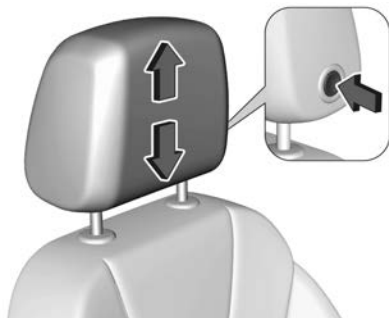


## Adjustment

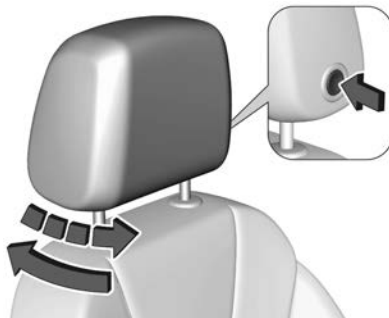
### Front Seats

#### Note

The front head restraints on VXR models are not adjustable.

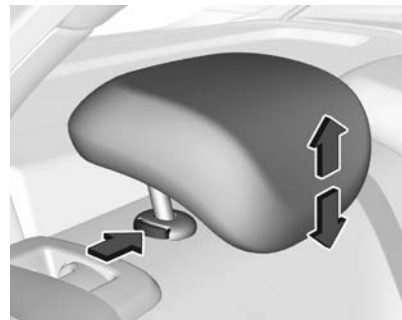


Press the release button, adjust the height and engage.



If equipped, press the release button, pull the head restraint forwards slowly. It engages in several positions.

### Rear Seat



Pull the head restraint upwards, or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

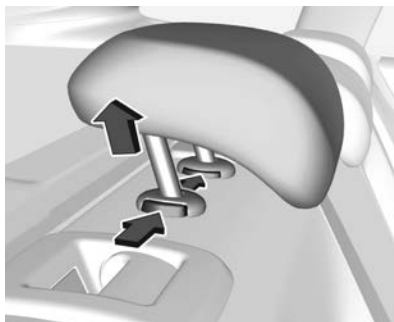
### Removal

#### **Warning**

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

### Rear Seat

Removal of rear head restraints for load compartment extension, etc.



Press both catches, pull the head restraint upwards and remove.

#### **Note**

The rear seat back may need to be partially folded to provide clearance.

See *Rear Seats* ⇨ 60.

## Front Seats

### Seat Position

#### **Warning**

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seat belts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.

#### **Warning**

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

#### **Warning**

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers. Unauthorised seat covers may impair the operation of the side impact airbags (SIAB).

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Always sit centrally in the seat.

Do not place any object between the seat and the door or the seat and the centre console. See *Airbag System* ⇨ 67.



- Sit with the buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so the legs are slightly angled when fully

pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.

- Set the seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand width of clearance between the head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Sit with the shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.

- Adjust the seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and the shoulders are on the backrest.
- Adjust the steering wheel. See *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ 92.
- Adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ 48.
- Adjust the thigh support so there is a space of approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.
- Adjust the lumbar support so it supports the natural shape of the spine.

### Seat Adjustment

#### Warning

Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving as the seat could move suddenly causing the driver to lose control.

#### Warning

Before moving the seat, ensure the path both in front of and behind the seat is clear of obstructions.

### Manual Seats

Drive only with seats and backrests engaged.

#### Note

The following shows all available configurations. Some may not be fitted to your vehicle.

### Longitudinal Adjustment



Lift the handle, slide the seat to the desired position then release the handle.

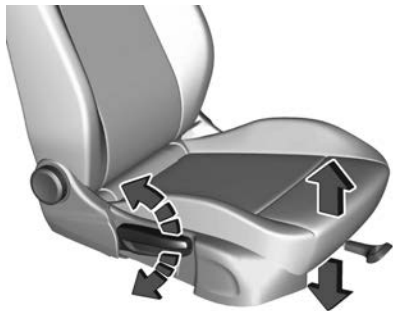
Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

### Backrest Inclination



Turn the hand-wheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

**Seat Height**



Move the lever in a pumping motion:  
 up : seat higher  
 down : seat lower

**Seat Inclination**



Press the switch:  
 top : front end higher  
 bottom : front end lower

**Lumbar Support**



Adjust the lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

To move the support up and down:  
 push switch up or down.

To increase and decrease support:  
 push switch forwards or backwards.

## 54 Seats and Restraints

### Adjustable Thigh Support



Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

### Power Seats

#### Note

The following shows all available configurations. Some may not be fitted to your vehicle.

### Longitudinal Adjustment



Move the switch forward/backward.

### Seat Height



Move the switch upward/downward.



**Seat Inclination**



Tilt the front of the switch upward/  
downward.

**Backrest Inclination**



Tilt the switch forward/backward.

**Lumbar Support**



Adjust the lumbar support using the  
four-way switch to suit personal  
requirements.

To move the support up and down:  
push switch up or down.

To increase and decrease support:  
push switch forwards or backwards.

### Adjustable Thigh Support



Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

### Side Bolster



Adjust seat backrest width to suit personal requirements.

### Memory Seats

Two different driver's seat and exterior mirror position settings can be stored.

### Storing Memory Positions



1. Adjust the driver's seat and then adjust the exterior mirrors to desired positions.
2. Press and hold the MEM and 1 or 2 buttons simultaneously until a chime sounds.

### Memory Position Recall

To move the seat to a memorised position, press and hold button 1 or 2 until the stored seat and exterior mirror positions are reached.

Releasing the button during seat movement cancels the recall.

## Automatic Memory Position Recall

Memory positions are assigned to driver (1 or 2) using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and are automatically recalled when the ignition is switched on.

In addition, a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) indicates the driver number, identified by the used RKE transmitter. If the ignition is switched on more than three subsequent times with the same key, the message will not be displayed again until another key is used.

To stop recall movement, press one of the seat memory, power mirror, or power seat controls.

A precondition is that Personalisation By Driver and Auto Memory Recall is activated in the infotainment system Settings menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

## Easy Exit Function

To assist exiting the vehicle, the power driver seat moves rearwards when the vehicle is stationary and the following occurs.

To activate the easy exit function:

1. Move the shift lever to position P (Park).
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Open the driver's door. If the door is already open, switch off the ignition to activate easy exit.

To stop the movement, press one of the memory or power seat controls.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

## Safety Function

If the driver's seat encounters resistance during movement, the recall may stop. After removing the obstruction, press and hold the appropriate memory position button for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again.

If the recall does not operate, consult your dealer.

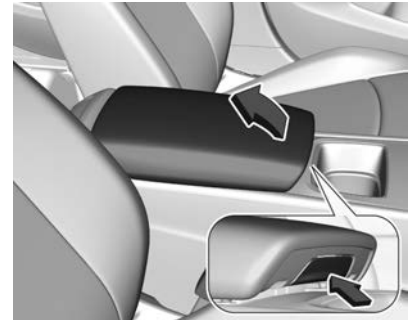
## Overload

If the seat setting is electrically overloaded, the power supply is automatically cut off for a short time.

## Note

After a collision in which the airbags have been deployed, the memory function for each position button will be deactivated.

## Front Seat Armrest




## 58 Seats and Restraints

Push the button and raise the armrest.

Under the armrest is a storage compartment and a wireless charger. See *Wireless Charging* ⇨ 98.

### Ventilated Front Seats



Adjust ventilation to the desired setting by pressing  for the seat one or more times. The lights in the button indicate the setting, three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

Ventilated seats are operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ 246.


### Heated Front Seats

#### Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (except genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.



Adjust seat heating to the desired setting by pressing  for the seat one or more times. The lights in the button indicate the setting, three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

Seat heating will be reduced automatically from the high to medium setting after 30 minutes.

Heated seats are operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ 246.

### Automatic Seat Heating

The vehicle may have automatic seat heating which can be enabled in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

When enabled, the heating of the seats will be activated automatically at vehicle start. The activation is based on several parameters such as vehicle interior temperature, intensity and direction of the sun and the temperature setting of the electronic climate control system for the driver and passenger side.

As the vehicle's interior warms up, the seat heating level will be reduced automatically until it finally goes off.

The seat heating level being provided during automatic operation is indicated by the heated seat indicator lights.

If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the automatic seat heating feature will not activate for that seat.

The seat heating buttons can be pressed at any time to exit the automatic seat heating for the seat and control the seat heating manually instead.

### Massage



Press the switch to turn on the back massage function.

To turn off, press the switch again. The current massage procedure will be ended, this may take a few seconds.

After ten minutes the massage function is switched off automatically.

## Rear Seats

The vehicle may have a two-section or three-section rear seat backrest. All sections can be folded down.

Before folding the rear seat backrests, perform the following if required:

- Remove the load compartment cover. See *Boot Cover (Liftback)* ⇨ 82.
- Lower the rear head restraints. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ 48.
- Remove the rear head restraints to allow the backrests to fully rest on the seat cushions. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ 48.

### Warning

Do not press the release button on the top of the seatback while the vehicle is moving. This could cause damage or injuries to the occupants.

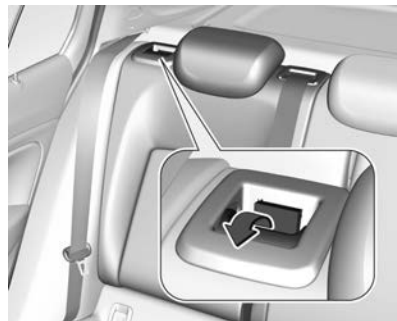
Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seatback could be thrown within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

### Caution

Do not trap the seat belt when returning the seatback or seat section to the upright position.

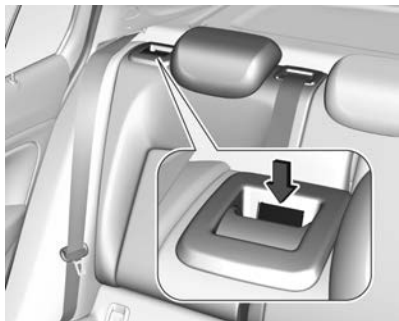
## Two-Section Backrest

Fold up the rear armrest, if fitted.



Pull the release lever on the outer side and fold down the backrest onto the seat cushion. Repeat for the opposite side if desired.

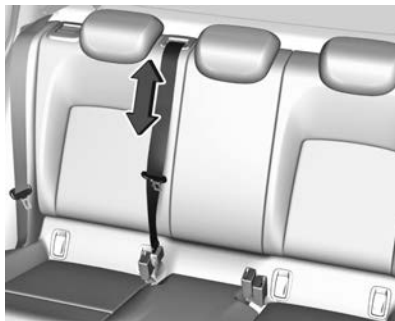
To fold up, ensure the seat belts are positioned away of the folding area and raise the backrest into an upright position until it engages audibly.



The backrest is securely engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

### Warning

When folding the rear seat backrest, ensure the backrest is securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.



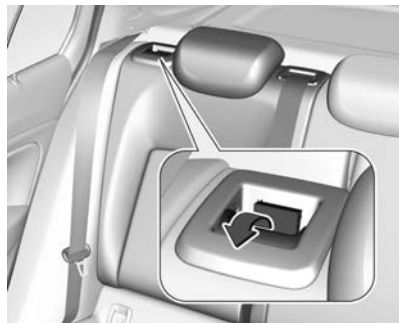
The centre seat belt might lock if the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the seat belt retractor, push in the seat belt and withdraw it approx. 20 mm, then release.

### Three-Section Backrest

Fold up the rear armrest.



Pull the loop and fold down the centre backrest onto the seat cushion.

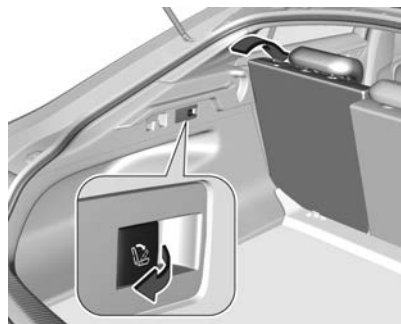


## 62 Seats and Restraints

Pull the release lever on the outer side and fold down the backrest onto the seat cushion. Repeat for the opposite side if desired.

### Warning

Take care when folding down the right outer seat backrest if the centre seat backrest is already folded down. There is a risk of injury due to the bolt protruding from the inner side of the backrest.



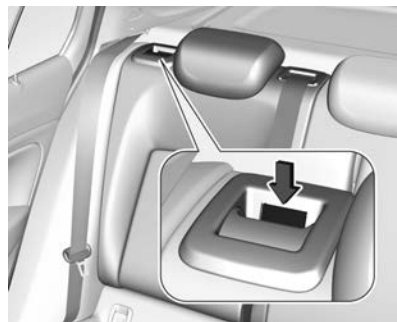
Alternatively, fold the seat backrests from the load compartment: Pull the lever on left or right side of the load compartment to fold the corresponding part of the rear seat backrest.

### Warning

Take care when operating the rear backrests from the load compartment. Folding the backrest requires considerable force. There is a risk of injury, particularly to children.

Ensure that nothing is attached to the rear seats or located on the seat cushion.

To fold up, ensure the seat belts are positioned away of the folding area and raise the backrest into an upright position until it engages audibly.



The backrests are securely engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

### Warning

When folding the rear seat backrest, ensure the backrest is securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.





The centre seat belt might lock if the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the seat belt retractor, push in the seat belt and withdraw it approx. 20 mm, then release.

### Rear Seat Armrest



The vehicle may have a rear seat armrest.

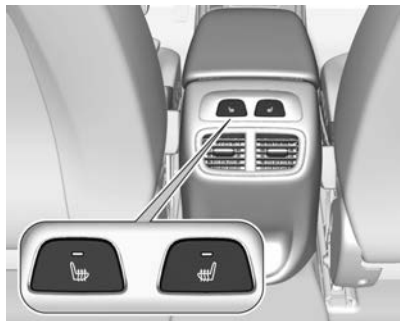
Fold the armrest down. The armrest contains cupholders.



### Heated Rear Seats

#### Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (except genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.



Activate seat heating by pressing  for the rear outer seat. Activation is indicated by a light in the button. Press  once more to deactivate seat heating.

Heated seats are operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ 246.

## Seat Belts

### How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

#### Warning

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

The seat belts are locked during heavy vehicle acceleration or deceleration, holding the occupants




in the seat. Thereby the risk of injury is considerably reduced. Fasten the seat belt before each trip.

Periodically check all parts of the seat belt system for damage, soiling and correct functionality. Ensure they draw out smoothly and retract correctly when not in use. Have damaged components replaced immediately.

**Note**

Ensure the seat belts are not damaged by sharp-edged objects or trapped in a door, etc. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

**Seat Belt Reminder**


Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated for front seats by  and , or for rear seats by  in the Driver Information Centre (DIC. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 115.

**Belt Force Limiters**

During a collision, stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt.

**Seat Belt Pretensioners**

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts are tightened by one pretensioner per seat.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of instrument cluster indicator . See *Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light* ⇨ 109.

Seat belt pretensioners can only be triggered once and then must be replaced.

**Note**

- Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners.
- Do not make any modifications to belt pretensioner components.

**Three-Point Seat Belt**

**Fitting**



The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips.

1. Pull the metal tongue across your body.
2. Clip it into the buckle.
3. When the metal tongue is locked safely into place you will hear a click.
4. Give a gentle pull on the buckle to ensure full engagement.

## 66 Seats and Restraints

5. Settle the belt at the hip.
6. Run your hand under the sash from hip to shoulder.

The belt should fit comfortably. Any extra belt length retracts automatically.



### Note

For your safety, wear the lap section of the seat belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist or abdomen.

The Emergency-locking Retractor Belt allows you to move while the vehicle is travelling normally, but

locks immediately on fast braking, impact with a solid object or any quick movement by the wearer.

Rear seat belts feature an Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR). If the shoulder portion of a rear seat belt is pulled out all the way, the locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again. See *Child Restraint Installation Locations* ⇨ 76.

### Removing



1. Press the release button on the buckle.

2. Allow the belt to retract.
3. Check that it fully retracts without twisting or turning.

## Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seat belt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three point belt with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach, throughout the pregnancy.

## Seat Belt Care

### Warning

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

## Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

### Warning

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

## Airbag System

When triggered, airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

### Danger

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system.

The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Sitting too close to the airbag can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.

Always wear a seat belt.

### Warning

**WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!**

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.



## AIRBAG



**⚠ Warning**

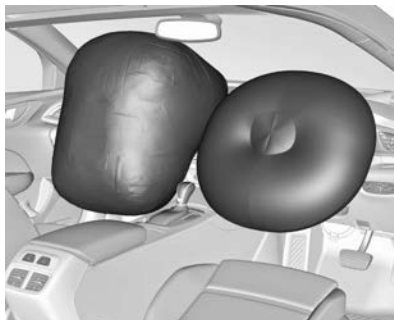
Airbags are part of the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) as they assist, but do not replace seat belts.

Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they deploy including speed, angle of collision and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is involved in a rollover. Seat belts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury.

Seat belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

## Front Airbag System



The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the passenger side. These are identified by the word AIRBAG.

**⚠ Warning**

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

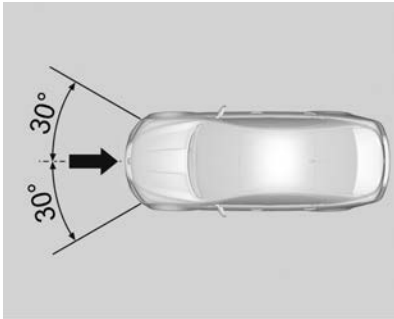
The driver should adjust the seat as far rearward as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

**⚠ Warning**

Do not place any objects on or over the instrument panel or between an airbag and yourself.

Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the instrument panel.



Front airbags will inflate in certain severe frontal or near frontal impacts. Front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the side, rear or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

## Side Airbag System



Side Impact Airbags (SIAB) are stored in the outer side of the front seats and can be identified by the word AIRBAG.



### Note

SIAB deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.

Because there is limited time available to detect some side impacts, it is not possible to deploy the SIAB in all serious accidents.

A SIAB will deploy in certain severe side impacts. SIAB are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the front, rear, or in rollovers.

Always wear a seat belt.

**⚠ Warning**

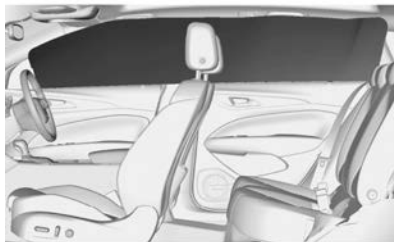
Do not fit unauthorised seat covers as they may impair the deployment of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB).

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

Do not lean on, or sleep against, the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

## Curtain Airbag System



Curtain airbags are stored in the roof on each side of the vehicle. They can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbags deploy in most, but not all severe side impacts. The risk of injury to the head in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

**⚠ Warning**

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates. Refer to the illustration.

Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up light articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of the hanging items.

Do not hold onto the assist grips (above the doors) while seated in the vehicle.

Do not lean on, or sleep against the front or rear doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.



## What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

Airbags inflate and deflate within milliseconds.

Fifteen seconds after any airbag or seat belt pretensioner has been activated (the vehicle has stopped and provided there is battery power), the following will occur:

- The engine will switch off.
- The fuel pump will switch off.
- The hazard lamps will switch on.
- The interior lamp will switch on.
- The doors will unlock.


Switch the ignition off and then on if restarting the engine is required.

## Notices for Customer Installed Equipment



### Warning

The fitting of roof bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling. See "Fitting roof bars" under *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ 317.

## Airbag System Check

The  in the instrument cluster illuminates for a few seconds when the ignition is turned on. This indicates the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) is operational.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately:

- If  does not illuminate when the ignition is turned on.
- If  illuminates when driving.
- If the warning 'Airbag Fault' is displayed on the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

In these instances the SRS may not function correctly in the event of an accident. See *Airbag System* ⇨ 67.

## Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

### Note

After an accident where the SRS has deployed, the systems, associated parts and hardware must be checked and replaced as required.

Seats, associated parts and hardware must also be checked and replaced as required.

## 72 Seats and Restraints

The SRS should also be inspected after an accident if:

- The instrument panel area or steering wheel is scratched, cracked or damaged.
- The front seats and upholstery are damaged.
- The headliner or trim panels are damaged.

It is recommended that this work be carried out by a Holden Dealer or approved repairer.

### Child Restraints

#### Older Children



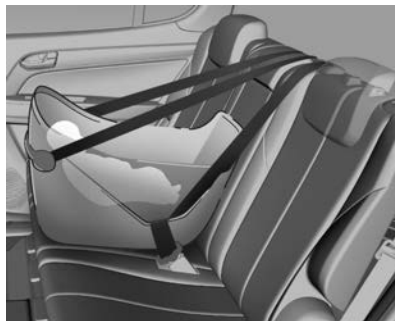
A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.

- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

#### Infants and Young Children

##### Infants



Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

## Young Children



Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

## Booster Seats



Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

## Child Restraint Systems

### Warning

**WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!**

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.



### AIRBAG



### Warning

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only.

The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers and pets are suitably restrained. In most States and Territories of Australia, and in New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints and/or in certain locations within the vehicle.

Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint and seat location is suitable for your child.

### Warning

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint, as applicable to the type of restraint used.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

### Warning

Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's fitting instructions when installing a child restraint into the vehicle.

### Note

Refer to the relevant legislation, an approved child restraint fitting station or capsule manufacturer's information for the recommended type of child restraint to use.

### Selecting the Right System

#### Infants

Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

#### Young children

Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

#### Booster seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

**Older children**

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip

**Where to Put the Restraint**** Warning**

It is safest for children to be seated in the rear seat.

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fitting (as shown in the

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

following illustrations) are to be used. Earlier types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

Australian States and Territories and New Zealand have laws restricting the seating of children in the front passenger seat. In most jurisdictions, children under 4 years should not be seated in the front passenger seat. Check your local road safety regulations before seating a child in the front seat.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go.


Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

**Note**

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, please contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

## Top Tether Anchor Fittings



Top tether anchors are located on the back of the rear seat backs and are identified with symbol .

Do not attach anything other than a child restraint system to the vehicle top tether anchors.

## Child Restraint Installation Locations

The vehicle has been designed to accommodate child restraints on the rear seat.

When using a child restraint, read the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint and follow the directions for fitting carefully.

Secure the child in the restraint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

## Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Seat Belts

ALR seat belts are provided at the rear seating positions. Use these in conjunction with a top tether strap when a non-ISOFIX child seat is being used.

Extend the seat belt fully and then fit the belt around the applicable locations on the child restraint and fasten the buckle. Refer to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint.


Allow the belt to retract. While the belt is retracting, a clicking noise can be heard which indicates the

ALR mechanism is functioning. The seat belt is locked and cannot be extended until fully retracted, enabling the belt to be fitted securely to the child restraint.

To release the locking mechanism, undo the buckle and allow the seat belt to fully retract. It will then function as a normal Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) seat belt until fully extended again.

## ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems



ISOFIX mounting locations are marked by a  on the rear seat back.

Open the cover and fasten the vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

#### Note

Ensure the seat belt buckles are placed out of the way of the child seat.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting brackets, fasten the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchor points.

## Pedestrian Protection System

The pedestrian protection system can help reduce injury to pedestrians in the case of a frontal collision.

When the sensors in the front bumper detect a certain impact within a speed range of 25 km/h to 50 km/h, the rear of the bonnet is lifted to reduce pedestrian head injuries.

In addition, the front bumper is designed to reduce leg injuries to pedestrians.

The active bonnet can be triggered only once and remains in the raised position. A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Have the actuators, hinges and bonnet replaced as soon as possible.



#### Warning

Do not drive with the bonnet raised.



#### Warning

After any frontal collision the front bumper may appear to be intact, however, the sensors may be damaged. Consult a dealer to verify correct functionality of the sensors.

The system may not trigger under the following conditions:

- The impact is out of sensor range.
- The sensors are damaged or are blocked by accessories.
- The bonnet is blocked by snow or ice.
- The vehicle speed is not within the correct range.
- The object is too small.

## 78 Seats and Restraints

### Manual Bonnet Lowering

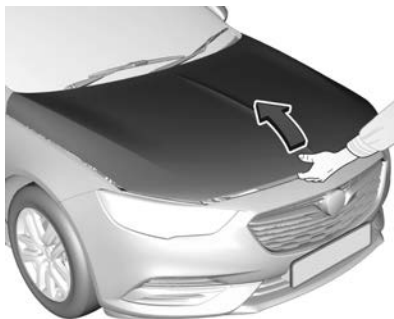
#### Warning

After the system has triggered, the bonnet hinges are hot. Do not touch.

The triggered bonnet can be manually lowered to enable temporarily driving to a dealer or repairer:



1. Pull the bonnet release lever.



2. Push the safety catch to the left and open the bonnet approx. 20 cm. Then lower it slowly without engaging the catch.
3. Push each rear corner of the bonnet down with both hands in small steps, alternating between the right and left sides.

#### Warning

Keep away from the edge of the bonnet to prevent injuries.

4. Check the bonnet is engaged at the rear.
5. Close the bonnet at the front and check it is engaged securely.



## Storage

### Storage Compartments

Storage Compartments .....	79
Glove Box .....	79
Cupholders .....	79
Front Storage .....	80
Sunglasses Storage .....	80
Armrest Storage .....	81
Rear Storage .....	81
Centre Console Storage .....	81

### Additional Storage Features

Boot Cover (Liftback) .....	82
Rear Floor Storage Cover .....	82
Cargo Cover (Sportwagon, Tourer) .....	83
Cargo Tie-Downs .....	84
Convenience Net .....	85

### Roof Rack System

Roof Rack System .....	88
------------------------	----

### Information on Loading the Vehicle

Information on Loading the Vehicle .....	89
---	----

## Storage Compartments

### Warning

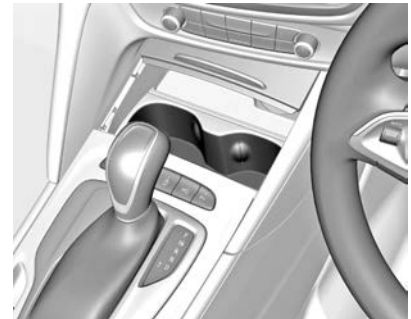
Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

### Glove Box



Open the glovebox by lifting the lever. The glovebox should be closed whilst driving.

### Cupholders



Cupholders are located in the centre console behind a cover. Push cover forward to open.



Cupholders are also located in the rear armrest. Fold down the armrest, if equipped.

### Front Storage



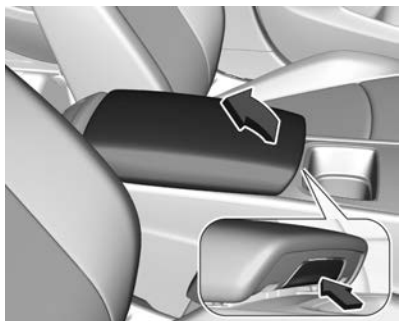
A storage box is located in the centre console. Push cover forward to open.

### Sunglasses Storage



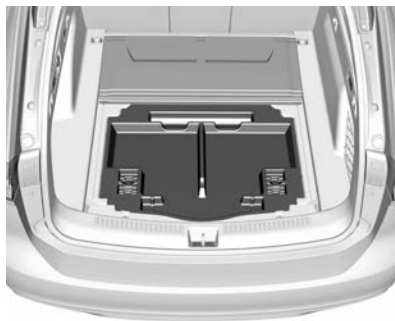
Push to fold down and open.  
Do not use for storing heavy objects.

## Armrest Storage



Push the button and raise the armrest.

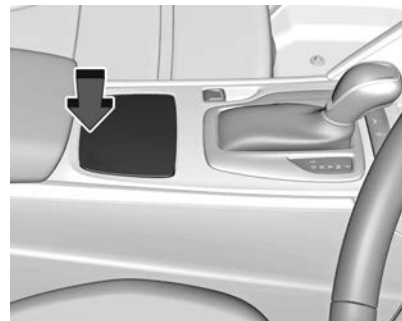
## Rear Storage



A storage tray may be located in the load compartment. Open the rear floor cover to gain access. See *Rear Floor Storage Cover* ⇨ 82.

## Centre Console Storage

The storage compartment may be located under a cover and can be used to store small items.



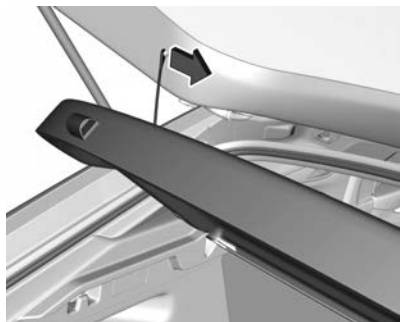
Press the rear of the cover to open.

## Additional Storage Features

### Boot Cover (Liftback)

Do not place any objects on the cover.

#### Removal



Unhook the retaining straps from the tailgate.



Lift the cover at the rear and then at the front.

Remove the cover.

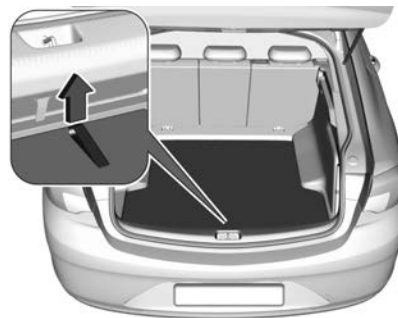
#### Installation

Engage the cover in the side guides and insert downwards.

Attach the retaining straps to the tailgate.

## Rear Floor Storage Cover

### Liftback



The rear floor cover can be removed.

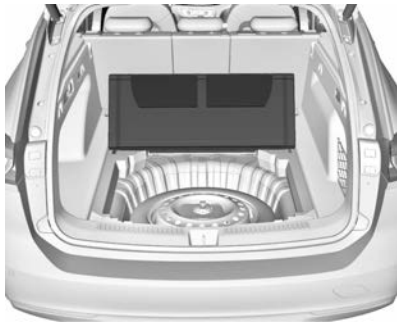
Raise cover at the loop and remove.

### Sportwagon, Tourer

The rear floor cover can be folded or removed.



Pull the handle and fold the rear part of the cover forward.



Set the folded cover upright behind the rear seat backrests, or remove it from the vehicle.

## Cargo Cover (Sportwagon, Tourer)

Use the cargo cover to provide added security for items stored beneath.

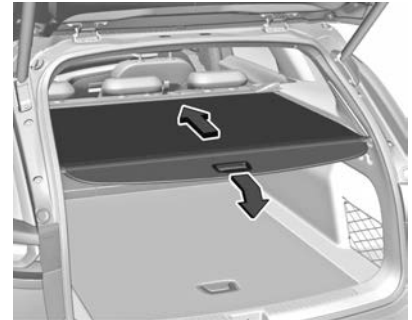
### Warning

Do not place objects on the cargo cover. Sudden stops or turns can cause objects to be thrown in the vehicle. You or others could be injured.

## Closing

Using the handle, pull the cover towards the rear and upwards until it engages in the side trim retainers.

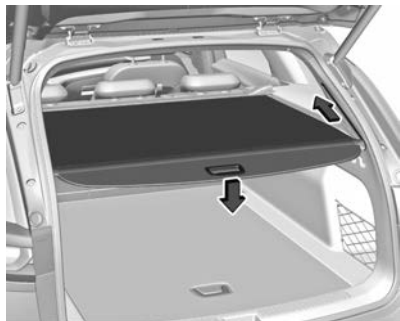
## Opening



Pull the cover handle to the rear and downwards.

The cover rolls up automatically.

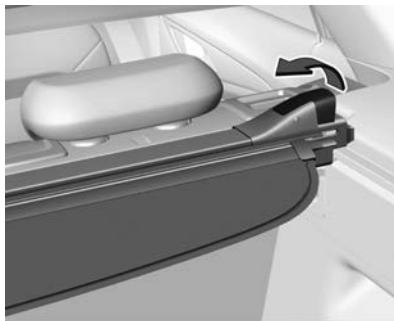
### Opening in Load Position



Press the cover handle.

The rear of the cover is guided upwards automatically.

### Removal



Open the cover.

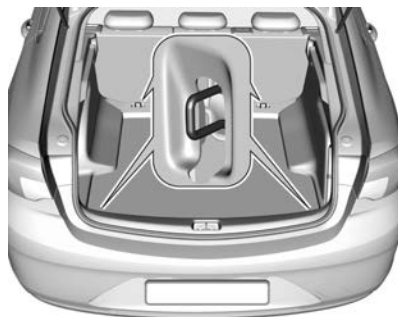
From the right-hand side, pull and hold the release lever up.

Lift the cover first on the right side and then remove it from the recesses.

### Installation

Insert the left side of the cover in its recess, then pull and hold the release lever up. Insert the right-hand side of the cover in the recess and engage.

### Cargo Tie-Downs



The cargo tie-downs are designed to secure items against slippage and are to be used in conjunction with straps or a luggage net.

#### **Warning**

Always make sure the load is secure and will not move during heavy braking or a collision.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

Use only approved tie-down straps and convenience net to secure your loads. Do not use elasticised straps.

Never attach more than one tie-down strap to any single cargo tie-down.

Protect the tie-down straps from sharp edges of the load. Replace them if they begin to wear.

Make sure the back seat is locked in the upright position whenever carrying heavy loads. This is a basic requirement for protection against load displacement in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

The rear seat in the upright position provides greater protection against load displacement.

The driving characteristics of the vehicle can be affected because the centre of gravity is altered when there is a load in the cargo area. Match your speed and driving style according to how the vehicle is loaded.

Make sure the rear axle load of the vehicle is not exceeded. See "Axle loads" under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ 383.

The maximum load for the tie-down system is 80 kg single mass when used in conjunction with the Holden approved straps.

That is, if an object weighs 80 kg, only one object can be held by the tie-down system.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Do not use when there are visible signs of wear or damage.

Place loads as low down and as far forward in the cargo area as possible. That is, against the back seat.

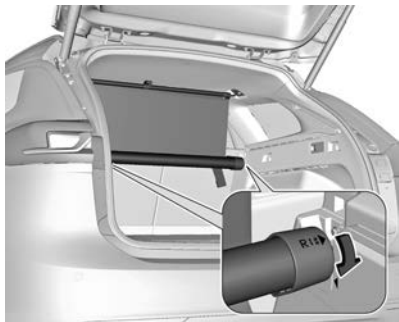
**Convenience Net**

The convenience net can be installed behind the rear seats. If the rear seat backrests are folded, the convenience net can also be installed behind the front seats.

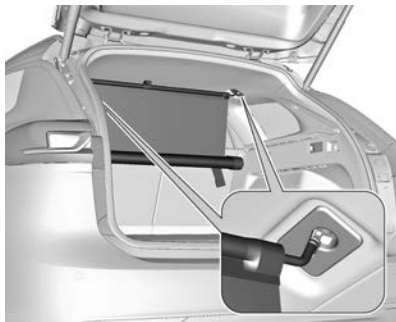
**Important:** Passengers must not travel behind the convenience net.

**Behind the Rear Seats****Installation**

1. Remove the load compartment cover, see *Cargo Cover (Sportwagon, Tourer)* ⇨ 83.



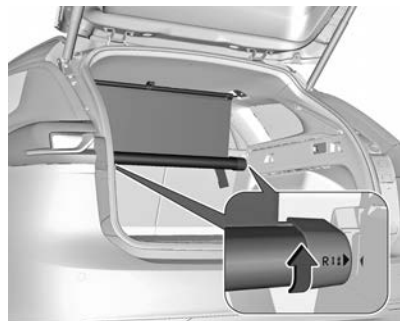
2. Insert the convenience net cassette into the retainers on the left and right sides. Note the marks L (left side) and R (right side) on the cassette.
3. Turn the cassette slightly until the arrows face each other to lock the cassette.



4. Pull the convenience net rod out of the cassette and engage the rod into the installation opening on one side of the roof frame.
5. Compress the rod slightly and engage at the other side.

### Removal

1. Remove and compress one side of the convenience net rod from the installation opening.
2. Remove the other side of the rod from the installation opening.
3. Roll up the safety net.

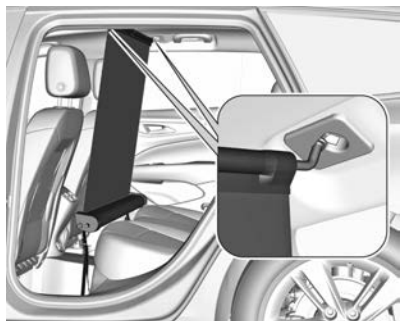


4. Turn the cassette slightly to unlock and remove from the retainers.

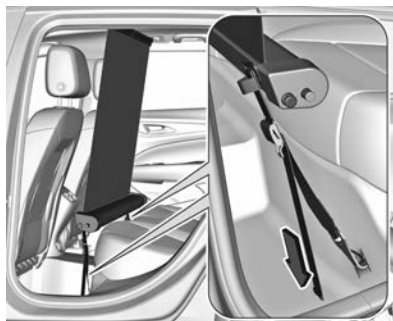


## Behind the Front Seats

### Installation

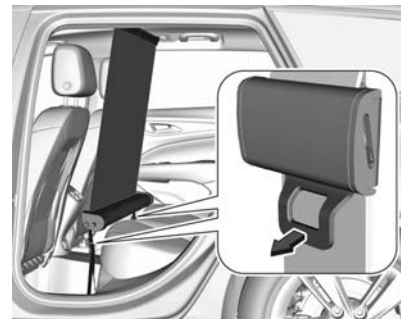


1. Engage the convenience net rod into the installation opening on one side of the roof frame.
2. Compress the rod slightly and engage the other side.
3. Pull the convenience net rod out of the cassette.



4. Attach the hooks to the loops in the floor in front of the rear seats.  
To access the loops, push the perforated opening in the floor covering on both sides.
5. Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
6. Fold the rear head restraints down and fold the rear seats forward, see *Rear Seats* ⇨ 60.

### Removal



1. Pull the tightener on both sides to release the straps.
2. Remove and compress one side of the convenience net rod from the installation opening.
3. Remove the other side of rod from the installation opening.
4. Roll up the convenience net.
5. Detach the hooks from the floor loops.

## Roof Rack System

A Holden genuine roof rack system can be purchased as an accessory and used to load items.

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, only the approved roof rack is recommended. For further information, contact your dealer.

### Warning

Ensure all objects carried on the roof rack system are loaded evenly and are secured tightly with straps.

Never carry objects that are longer or wider than the vehicle unless using a Holden certified accessory carrier.

### Caution

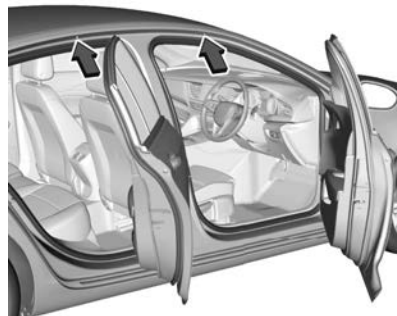
The load, including the weight of the roof rack, must not exceed 100 kg.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo when driving, check to ensure the roof rack and cargo are securely fastened.

Loading cargo on the roof rack will make the vehicle's centre of gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking, or abrupt manoeuvres; otherwise loss of control may result.

### Fitting

#### Liftback



Open all doors. The mounting points are located in each door frame of the vehicle's body.

Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions supplied with the roof rack.

Remove the roof rack when not in use.

## Sportwagon, Tourer

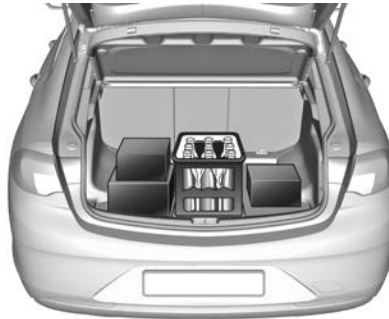


Mounting points are located in each roof railing.

Fasten the roof rack on the first two mounting points according to the installation instructions supplied with the roof rack.

Remove the roof rack when not in use.

## Information on Loading the Vehicle



- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Ensure the backrests are securely engaged and the red markings near the release lever are not visible.

If objects are going to be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.

- Secure loose objects in the load compartment to prevent them from sliding. Secure the load with straps attached to the cargo tie-down points. See *Cargo Tie-Downs* ⇨ 84.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- Do not place objects in the area where the front, side, or curtain airbags inflate.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear shift lever, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.

- Do not exceed the maximum vehicle carrying capacity or vehicle axle loads. Overloading is a safety hazard. See *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ 383.
- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps.

Check and retighten the straps frequently.

Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions.

The permissible roof load is 100 kg. The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.

### Carrying Portable Gas Cylinders in Vehicles

#### Warning

Gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion. As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders. They must be restrained from rolling around, and where possible, placed in the load area of the vehicle.

It is recommended that if gas cylinders are frequently transported, that a purpose-built carrying compartment be used. Ensure any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

# Instruments and Controls

## Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment	92
Steering Wheel Controls	92
Horn	93
Windshield Wiper/Washer	93
Rear Window Wiper/Washer (Sportwagon, Tourer)	95
Outside Temperature	96
Clock	96
Power Outlets	97
Wireless Charging	98

## Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Instrument Cluster	99
Speedometer	104
Odometer	105
Trip Odometer	105
Tachometer	106
Fuel Gauge	106
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	107
Service Display	107
Turn Signal	108
Seat Belt Reminders	109

Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light	109
Charging System Light	110
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	110
Brake System Warning Light	110
Electric Parking Brake Light	111
Service Electric Parking Brake Light	111
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light	111
Gear Shifting Light	111
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light	111
Vehicle Ahead Indicator	112
Pedestrian Ahead Indicator	112
Follow Distance Indicator Light	112
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light	112
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/ Warning Light	112
Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light	112
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light	113
Pre-Heat Light	113

Engine Oil Pressure Light	113
Low Fuel Warning Light	113
AdBlue Warning Light	113
Immobiliser Light	113
High-Beam On Light	114
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light	114
Front Fog Lamp Light	114
Rear Fog Light	114
Lamps On Reminder	114
Cruise Control Light	114
Door Ajar Light	114

## Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)	115
Head-Up Display (HUD)	121

## Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages	124
Warning Chimes	125
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages	125

## Vehicle Personalisation

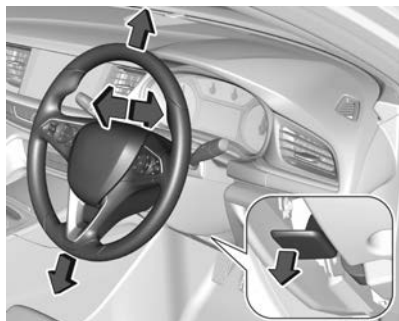
Vehicle Personalisation	126
-------------------------	-----

## Controls

### Steering Wheel Adjustment

#### Warning

Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving.



Unlock the lever below the steering column. Adjust the steering wheel and then engage lever. Ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

### Steering Wheel Controls

Driver Information Centre (DIC) menus, the infotainment system and a connected mobile phone, and some driver assistance systems can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.




The illustrations show different versions.

See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)*

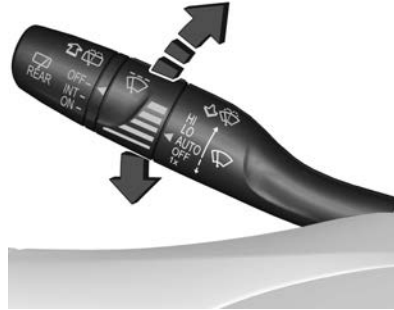
- ⇨ 115, Overview
- ⇨ 145, Overview
- ⇨ 174, Driver Assistance Systems
- ⇨ 268.

## Horn



Press .

## Windshield Wiper/Washer Windscreen Wiper



**HI** : fast

**LO** : slow

**AUTO** : automatic wiping with rain sensor

**OFF** : off

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

### Caution

Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

Do not use if the windscreen is iced over. Switch off in car washes.

### Adjusting Rain Sensor Sensitivity



Wiper lever in position **AUTO**.

## 94 Instruments and Controls

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

### Caution

Switch off the rain sensor by setting the lever to the **OFF** position before entering a car wash.

Replace the wiper blades as soon as they do not completely remove water from the windscreen. If the blades are not replaced, the wipers may continue to wipe even though most of the screen is dry.

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, make sure that the windscreen is fully defrosted before switching on the rain sensor.



Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

The rain sensor function can be activated or deactivated. When it is deactivated, the wipers operate as manual intermittent wipers. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

## Windscreen Washer



Pull the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper operates a few times.

See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ 335.



## Rear Window Wiper/ Washer (Sportwagon, Tourer)

### Rear Window Wiper



Turn the outer cap to activate the rear window wiper:

**OFF** : off

**INT** : intermittent operation

**ON** : continuous operation

### Caution

Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

Do not use if the rear window is frozen. Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper operates automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

### Rear Window Washer



Push the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper operates a few times.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is low. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ 335.

## Outside Temperature



The outside temperature is displayed in the infotainment screen when the ignition is on.

A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.

The illustration shows an example.




If the outside temperature drops to 3°C, a warning message may be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

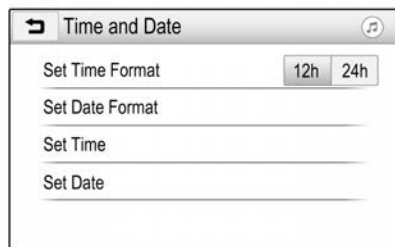
## Clock

Date and time are shown in the infotainment system display.

## MyLink Infotainment System

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Time and Date** to display the each submenu.



### Set Time Format

To select the desired time format, touch the screen buttons **12h** or **24h**.

### Set Date Format


To select the desired date format, select **Set Date Format** and choose between the available options in the submenu.

### Set Time, Set Date

To adjust the time and date settings, select **Set Time** or **Set Date**.

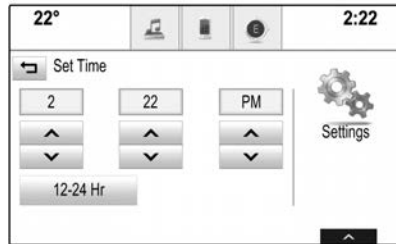
Touch **+** and **-** to adjust the settings.

## MyLink with Built-in Navigation Infotainment System

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Time and Date** and then select **Set Time**, **Set Date** or **Clock Display** to enter each submenu.

### Set Time



Touch **12-24 Hr** to select a time mode. If 12-hour mode is selected, a third column for AM and PM setting is displayed. Select the desired option.

Adjust the time by touching  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$ .

### Set Date

Adjust the date by touching  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$ .

### Clock Display

Select **Clock Display** to enter the submenu. To turn off the digital clock display in the menus, select **Off**.

## Power Outlets



A 12 volt power outlet is located in the centre console. With the ignition off, this power outlet is deactivated.



A 12 volt power outlet may be located at the left side in the load compartment. With the ignition off, the power outlet remains active.

### Warning

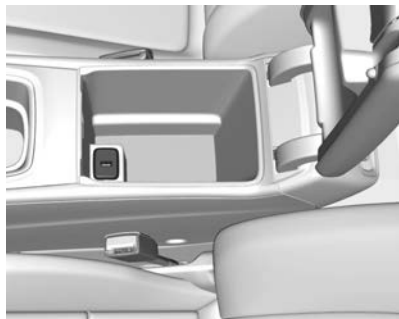
Do not use the load compartment power socket for a long period with the engine off as the vehicle battery may become flat.

## 98 Instruments and Controls

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 watts.

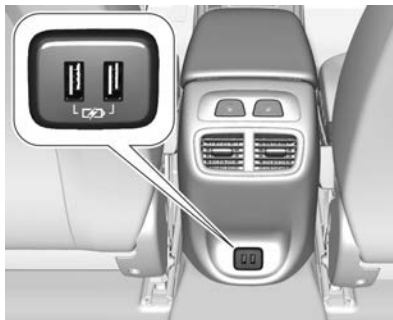
Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, such as electrical charging devices or batteries. Do not damage the outlets by using unsuitable plugs.

### USB Ports



A single or double USB port for charging devices is located below the console's armrest. This USB port also includes a data connection to the infotainment system. See *USB* ⇨ 156, *USB* ⇨ 193.

### USB Charging Ports



Two USB ports for charging devices only are located in the back of the centre console.

### Wireless Charging

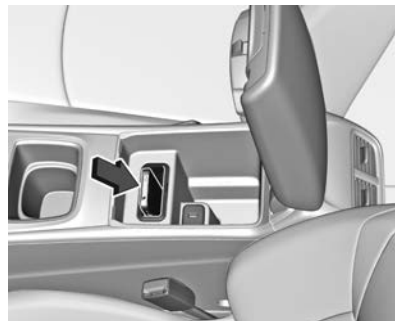
#### **Warning**

Wireless charging can affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is

(Continued)

#### **Warning (Continued)**

recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.




The vehicle may have a wireless charging slot located below the front armrest.


To charge a compatible mobile device the ignition must be switched on.

**⚠ Warning**

Remove any metal objects from the charging device before charging a mobile phone, as these objects could become very hot.

To charge a mobile device:

1. Remove all objects from the charging slot, otherwise the system may not charge.
2. Insert the mobile device with the display facing to the rear in the charging slot. Charging status is indicated in the infotainment display  and shows if mobile device is correctly positioned.

If  is not displayed, remove mobile device from the slot. Turn mobile device 180 degrees and wait three seconds before inserting mobile device again.

**Note**

- PMA or Qi compatible mobile devices can be charged wirelessly.
- A back cover with an integrated coil (e.g. Samsung<sup>®</sup> 4 and 5) or a jacket (e.g. some iPhone<sup>®</sup> models) may be required to charge a mobile device.
- The mobile device must be smaller than 8 cm in width and 15 cm in length to fit into the charging device. A protective cover for the mobile phone could have an impact on wireless charging.

**Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators****Instrument Cluster**

Depending on the model, three instrument clusters are available.

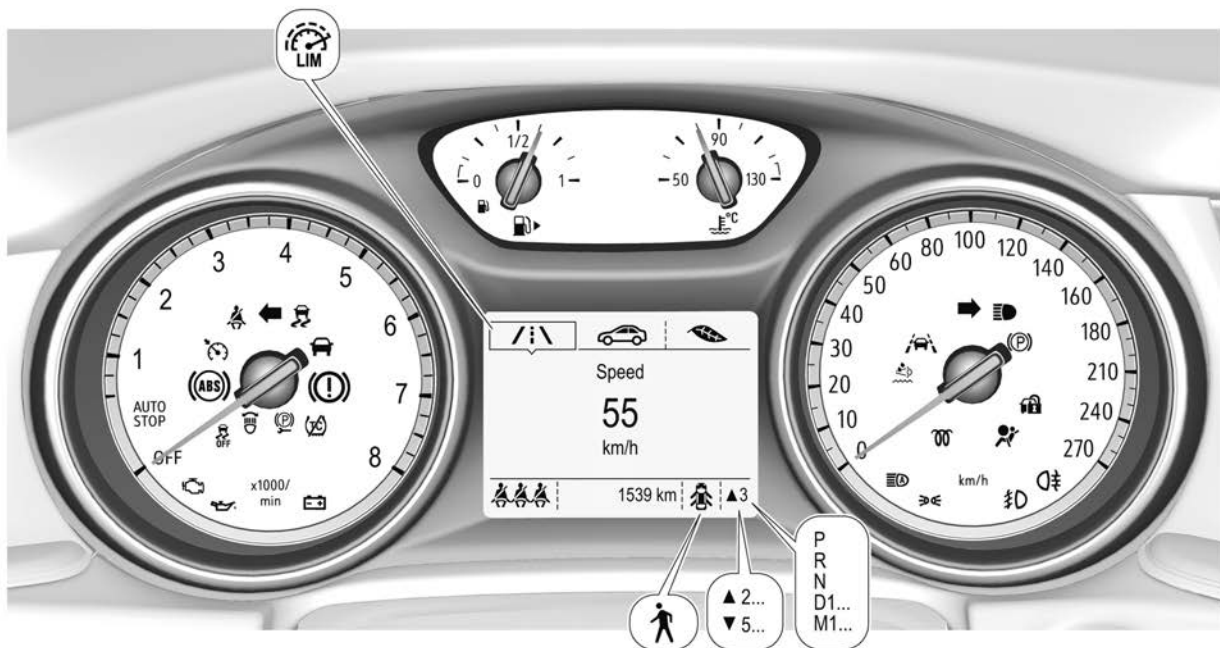
The Calais-V, RS-V, VXR, Calais-V Tourer instrument cluster can be displayed as Sport mode or Touring mode.

**Note**

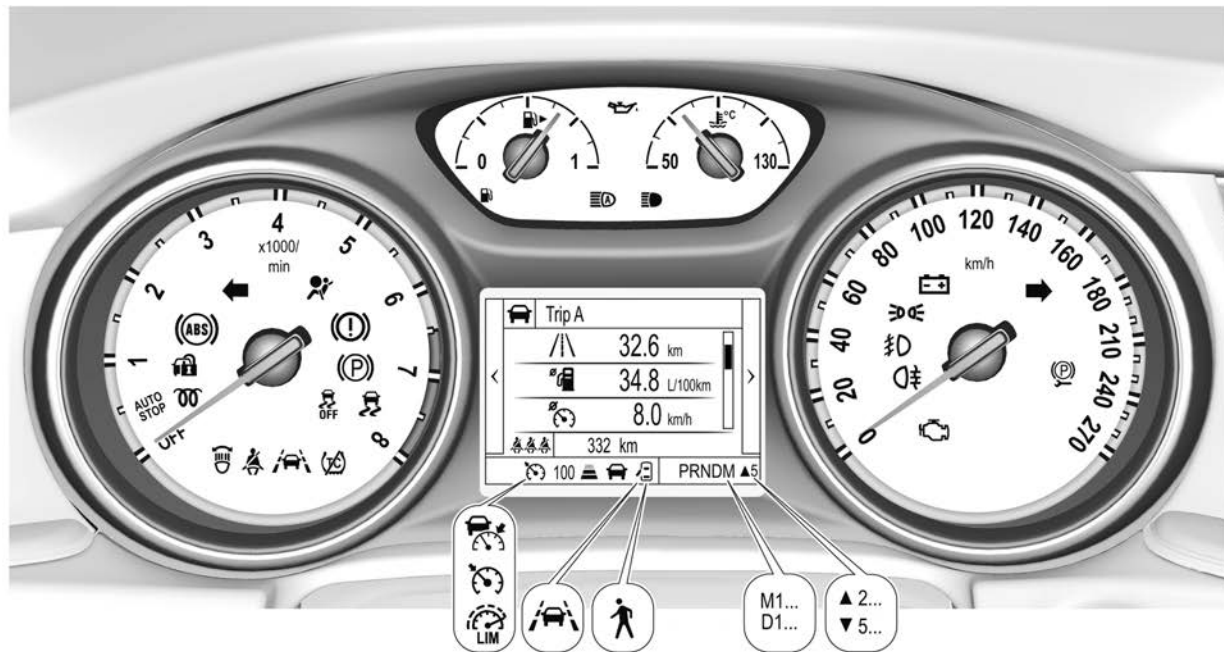
Displays may vary depending on vehicle options and equipment.

## 100 Instruments and Controls

### LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police)



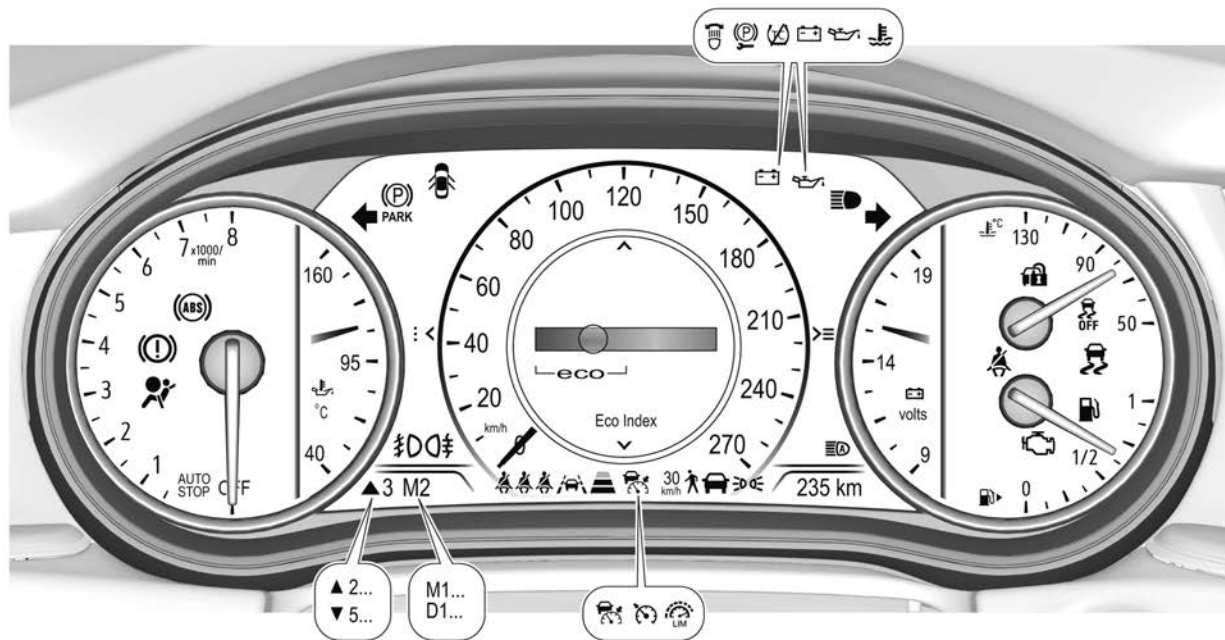
Calais, Calais Tourer



## 102 Instruments and Controls

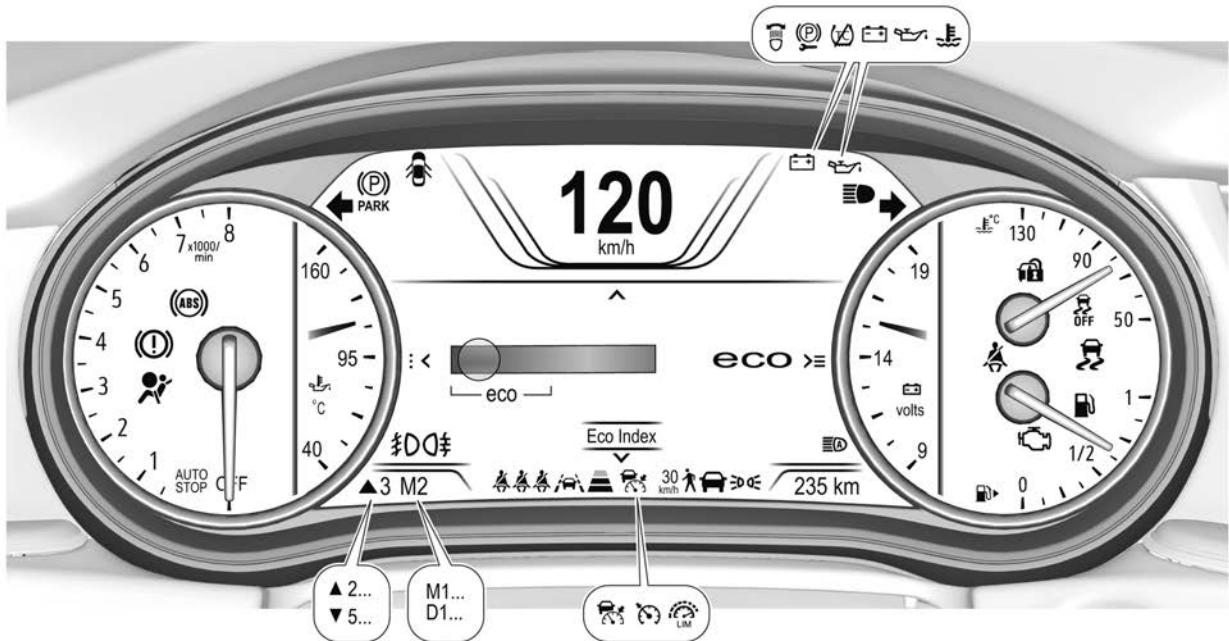
Calais-V, RS-V, VXR, Calais-V Tourer

Sport Mode


















Touring Mode



## 104 Instruments and Controls

### Overview

-  : Adaptive cruise control, see *Cruise Control Light* ⇨ 114
-  : Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) *Light* ⇨ 114
-  : AdBlue Warning Light ⇨ 113
-  : Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner *Light* ⇨ 109
-  : Antilock Brake System (ABS) *Warning Light* ⇨ 111
-  : Brake System *Warning Light* ⇨ 110
-  : Charging System *Light* ⇨ 110
-  : Cruise Control *Light* ⇨ 114
-  : Door Ajar *Light* ⇨ 114
-  : Electric Parking Brake *Light* ⇨ 111
-  : Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) *Indicator/Warning Light* ⇨ 112
-  : Electronic Stability Control (ESC) *Off Light* ⇨ 112
-  : Engine Coolant Temperature *Warning Light* ⇨ 113

-  : Engine Oil Pressure *Light* ⇨ 113
-  : Follow Distance Indicator *Light* ⇨ 112
-  : Front Fog Lamp *Light* ⇨ 114
-  : Rear Fog *Light* ⇨ 114
-  : Gear Shifting *Light* ⇨ 111
-  : High-Beam On *Light* ⇨ 114
-  : High Beam Assist, see *High-Beam On Light* ⇨ 114
-  : Immobiliser *Light* ⇨ 113
-  : Lamps On *Reminder* ⇨ 114
-  : Lane Keep Assist (LKA) *Light* ⇨ 111
-  : Low Fuel *Warning Light* ⇨ 113
-  : Malfunction *Indicator Lamp* ⇨ 110
-  : Pedestrian Ahead *Indicator* ⇨ 112
-  : Pre-Heat *Light* ⇨ 113
-  : Seat Belt *Reminders* ⇨ 109
-  : Service Electric Parking Brake *Light* ⇨ 111

 : Speed Limiter ⇨ 285

 : Traction Control System (TCS) *Off Light* ⇨ 112

 : Turn *Signal* ⇨ 108

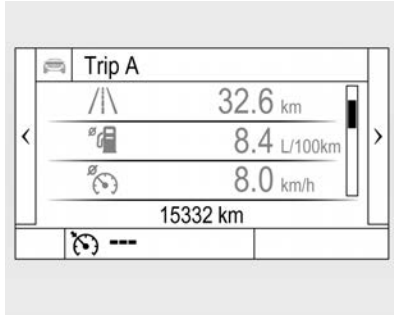
 : Vehicle Ahead *Indicator* ⇨ 112

### Speedometer



Indicates vehicle speed.

## Odometer



The total recorded distance is displayed in km.

## Trip Odometer

The recorded distance since the last reset is displayed on the trip odometer page.

The trip odometer counts up to 9,999 km and then restarts at 0.

Two trip odometer pages are selectable for different trips.

## LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police)

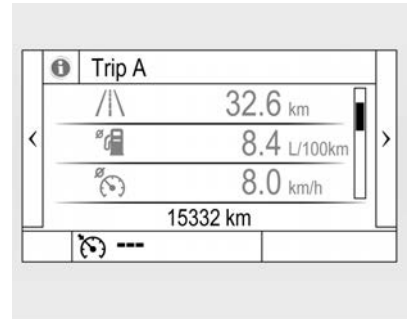


Select  $\swarrow/i\searrow$  by pressing **Menu** on the turn signal lever.

Turn the adjuster wheel on the turn signal lever and select  $\swarrow/i\searrow$ <sup>1</sup> or  $\swarrow/i\searrow$ <sup>2</sup>.

Each trip odometer page can be reset separately by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever for a few seconds while the menu is displayed.

## Calais, Calais Tourer

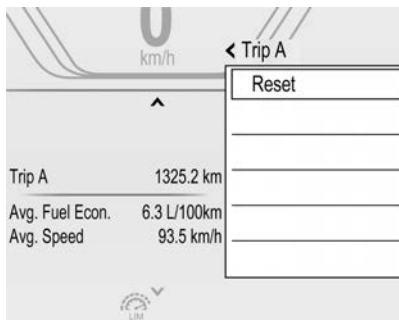


Select **Info** page **i** on the main menu. Choose page **Trip A** or **Trip B** by pressing  $\nabla$  on the steering wheel.

Each trip odometer can be reset separately when the ignition is on: Select the page, press  $\triangleright$ .

Confirm by pressing  $\checkmark$ .

### Calais-V, RS-V, VXR, Calais-V Tourer



Select **Info** page on the main menu. Choose page **Trip A** or **Trip B** by pressing  $\nabla$  on the steering wheel.

Each trip odometer can be reset separately when the ignition is on: Select the page, press  $\triangleright$ .

Confirm by pressing  $\checkmark$ .

### Tachometer



Displays the engine speed. As much as possible, drive with a low engine speed range for each gear.

#### Caution


If the needle is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. The engine is at risk. Reduce engine speed.

### Fuel Gauge



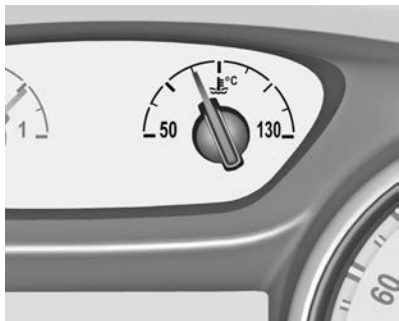
Displays the fuel level within the fuel tank.

The arrow indicates the vehicle side where the fuel filler door is located.

 illuminates if the fuel level is low. Refuel immediately if it flashes. Never run the fuel tank dry.

Because of fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



Displays the engine coolant temperature.

50° : engine operating temperature not yet reached

90° (central area) : normal operating temperature

130° : temperature too high

### Note

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, idle the engine and check the coolant level. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ 333.

## Service Display

The engine oil life system informs you when to change the engine oil and filter. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change will be indicated can vary considerably.




The remaining oil life menu is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 115.

To view the remaining oil life.



For vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever:

- Select the  screen by pressing **MENU** on the turn signal lever.
- Turn the adjuster wheel to select the Remaining Oil Life page.



For vehicles with steering wheel control switches:

- If required, navigate to the Info page **i** by pressing on the steering wheel, scroll using and confirm by pressing .
- Press to select the Remaining Oil Life page.

Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 100% is displayed that means 100% of the current oil life remains.

### Reset

The system must be reset every time the engine oil is changed to allow proper functionality. Seek the assistance of your dealer.

For vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever:

- With the Remaining Oil Life page displayed, press **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever for several seconds to reset.

The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.

For vehicles with steering wheel control switches:

- With the Remaining Oil Life page displayed, press on the steering wheel to open the sub-folder.
- Select **Reset** and confirm by pressing for several seconds.

The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.

### Next Service

When the system has calculated that the engine oil is approaching the end of its life, Change Engine Oil Soon appears in the Driver Information Centre. Have the engine oil and filter changed within one week or 1000km (whichever occurs first).

It is possible that if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate an oil change is necessary for a longer period than that shown in the Maintenance schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the Maintenance schedule outlined in the Service & Warranty Booklet.

### Turn Signal

illuminates or flashes green.

#### illuminates Briefly

The parking lights are switched on.

## Flashes


A turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Rapid flashing: Failure of a turn signal bulb or associated fuse, failure of a turn signal light on a trailer.


See *Bulb Replacement* ⇨ 338,  
*Fuses* ⇨ 349, *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ 137.

## Seat Belt Reminders

### Front Seats

 for the driver's seat illuminates or flashes red in the instrument cluster.




 for front passenger's seat illuminates or flashes red in the roof console, when the seat is occupied.

- Illuminates: After the ignition has been turned on until the seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes: After having started the engine for a maximum of 100 seconds until the seat belt is fastened.


### Rear Seats

#### LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police):

 illuminates or flashes white or grey in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

- Illuminates white: Seat belt is unfastened.
- Illuminates grey: Seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes white or grey: Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

#### Except LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police):

 illuminates green or grey or flashes yellow in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

- Illuminates grey: Seat belt is unfastened.
- Illuminates green: Seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes yellow: Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

See *Three-Point Seat Belt* ⇨ 65.

## Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light

 illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator illuminates for approx. four seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after four seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

### Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

See *Airbag System* ⇨ 67.

### Charging System Light


 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

If it illuminates when the engine is running, stop and turn the engine off. The vehicle's battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted and the brake servo unit may cease to be effective.

Seek the assistance of a dealer.

### Malfunction Indicator Lamp

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

#### Illuminates When the Engine is Running

A fault has been detected in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits may be exceeded.

On diesel engines, the cleaning process for the diesel particle filter might not be possible. Seek the assistance of a dealer immediately.

#### Flashes When the Engine is Running

A fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage has been detected. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a dealer immediately.

### Caution

If the vehicle is driven while this light is on, the emission controls might not operate correctly, the vehicle's fuel economy may increase, and the engine might not run smoothly. This may lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to illuminate. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### Brake System Warning Light

 illuminates red.


The brake fluid level is too low.



**⚠ Warning**

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

**Electric Parking Brake Light**


 illuminates or flashes red.

**Illuminates**

The electric parking brake is applied.


**Flashes**

The electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. Press the brake pedal and attempt to reset the system by first releasing then applying the electric parking brake.

If  keeps flashing, do not drive and seek the assistance of a dealer.

See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ 261.

**Service Electric Parking Brake Light**

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

**Illuminates**

The electric parking brake is operating with degraded performance.

**Flashes**


The electric parking brake is in service mode. Stop the vehicle, apply and release the electric parking brake to reset.

See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ 261.

**⚠ Warning**

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately. Avoid parking on inclines until the cause of the fault has been rectified.

**Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light**



 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.


If the control indicator does not extinguish after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ 260.

**Gear Shifting Light**

 or  with the number of a higher or lower gear is indicated when shifting up or down is recommended to save fuel.

**Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light**

 illuminates green or yellow, or flashes yellow.

### **Illuminates Green**

The system is switched on and ready to operate.

### **Illuminates Yellow**


The system is approaching a detected lane marking without the turn signal being used in that direction.

### **Flashes Yellow**

The system recognises that the vehicle has departed significantly from the lane.

See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ 306.

### **Vehicle Ahead Indicator**

 illuminates green or yellow.

### **Illuminates Green**

A vehicle ahead is detected in the same lane.

### **Illuminates Yellow**

The distance to a preceding moving vehicle has become too small, or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly.


See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ 293, *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ 286.

### **Pedestrian Ahead Indicator**

 illuminates yellow.


A pedestrian is detected ahead.

### **Follow Distance Indicator Light**

 indicates the timing sensitivity for the Following Distance alert setting for the Forward Collision alert.


*Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ 293.

### **Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light**

 illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

### **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light**

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

### **Illuminates**

A fault in the system is detected. Continued driving is possible. However, driving stability may deteriorate, depending on the road surface conditions. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a dealer.

### **Flashes**

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 264, *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ 263.

### **Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light**

 illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

 illuminates red.

If this illuminates when the engine is running, stop and switch the engine off.

### Note

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, idle the engine and check the coolant level. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ 333.

## Pre-Heat Light

 illuminates yellow.

Preheating of the diesel engine is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low. Start the engine when the indicator extinguishes.

## Engine Oil Pressure Light


 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is turned on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

### Illuminates When the Engine is Running


#### Caution

Engine damage may result if you keep driving. Do not run the engine. If the oil level is normal, have the system checked by your dealer.

If  illuminates while driving, do the following.

1. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles and stop the vehicle in a safe location.
2. Turn the ignition off.
3. Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 329.  
If required, seek the assistance of a dealer.

## Low Fuel Warning Light

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

### Illuminates


The fuel level in the fuel tank is low. Refill as soon as possible.

### Flashes

Fuel very low. Refuel immediately. Never run the tank dry.

See *Filling the Tank* ⇨ 311, *Diesel Fuel System Bleeding* ⇨ 337.

## AdBlue Warning Light

 flashes yellow.

AdBlue level is low. Refill AdBlue soon to avoid the system preventing the engine from starting.

See *AdBlue (Diesel)* ⇨ 251.

## Immobiliser Light

 flashes yellow.

There is a fault in the immobiliser system. The engine cannot be started.

See *Immobiliser* ⇨ 39.

## High-Beam On Light

 illuminates blue.

Illuminates when high beam is on or during a headlight flash.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ 132.


## High Beam Assist

 illuminates green.

The high beam assist is activated.

See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ 133.

## Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

### Illuminates

A fault is detected in the system. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

### Flashes

The system is switched to symmetrical low beam. The indicator flashes for approx.

four seconds after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for symmetrical headlights.

See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ 133.

## Front Fog Lamp Light

 illuminates green.

The front fog lamps are on.

See *Front Fog Lamps* ⇨ 137.

## Rear Fog Light

 illuminates yellow.

The rear fog lamp is on.

See *Rear Fog Lights* ⇨ 138.


## Lamps On Reminder

 illuminates green.

The exterior lights are on.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ 131.

## Cruise Control Light

 illuminates white or green.

### Illuminates White


The system is on.

### Illuminates Green

Cruise control is active. The set speed is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ 282.

### Adaptive Cruise Control

 illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

### Illuminates White

The system is on.

### Illuminates Green

Adaptive cruise control is active.

See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ 286.

## Door Ajar Light

 illuminates red.

A door or the tailgate is open.

## Information Displays

### Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) is located in the instrument cluster.

Three DICs are available depending on the vehicle model. The following functions may be available in the DIC.







#### Note

The following describes possible options. Some may not be available in your vehicle.


- Odometer and trip odometer.
- Vehicle information and settings.
- Trip/fuel information.
- Driving economy information.
- Driver assistance alerts.
- Warning messages.
- Performance information.
- Audio and infotainment information.
- Phone information.


- Navigation information.

#### LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police)

		
 <sup>1</sup>	134.2 km	
	4.9 l/100km	
	34.7 km/h	
✓ Reset		
3179 km		

Main menu symbols are indicated in the top line of the display:

 : Trip/fuel information.

 : Vehicle information.

 : ECO information.

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or when it is at a standstill. Some functions are only available when the vehicle is being driven.

### Selecting Menus and Functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever.



Press **MENU** to switch between the main menus or to return from a submenu to the next higher menu level.

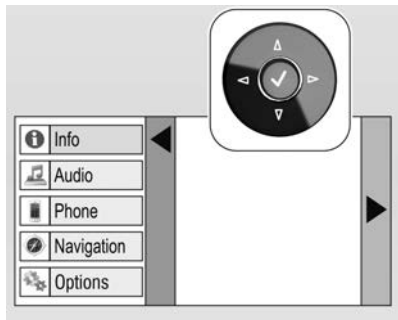
Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu of the main menu or to set a numeric value.

Press **SET/CLR** to select and confirm a function.

## 116 Instruments and Controls

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre as required. Confirm messages by pressing **SET/CLR**. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ 124.

### Calais, Calais Tourer



Main menus are:

**Info** : Trip/fuel information.

**Audio** : Audio information.

**Phone** : Phone information.

**Navigation** : Navigation information.

**Options** : Information page items and vehicle speed warning.

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or when it is at a standstill. Some functions are only active when the vehicle is being driven.

### Selecting Menus and Functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel.



Press ◀ to open a main menu page.

Select a main menu page with ▾ or ▲.

Confirm a main menu page with ✓.

Once a main menu page is selected, press ▾ or ▲ to select sub-pages.

If available, press ▶ to open a next folder of the selected sub-page.

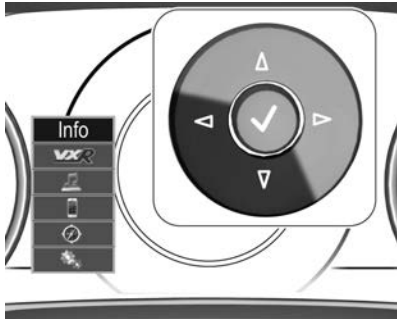
Press ▾ or ▲ to select functions or to set a numeric value, if required.

Press ✓ to select and confirm a function.

Once a main menu page is selected, this selection remains stored until another main menu page is selected. Sub-pages are changed by pressing ▾ or ▲.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre as required. Confirm messages by pressing ✓. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ 124.

## Calais-V, RS-V, VXR, Calais-V Tourer



Main menus are:

**Info** : Trip/fuel information.

**VXR** : Performance information.

🎵 : Audio information.

▲ : Navigation information.

☎ : Phone information.

⚙ : Vehicle information.

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or when it is at a standstill. Some functions are only active when the vehicle is being driven.

### Note

This instrument cluster can be displayed as Sport mode or Touring mode. See Vehicle Information Menu / Display Theme below.

### Selecting Menus and Functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel.



Press ◀ to open the main menu page.

Select a main menu page with ▾ or ▲.

Confirm a main menu page with ✓.

Once a main menu page is selected, press ▾ or ▲ to select sub-pages.

If available, press ▶ to open a next folder of the selected sub-page.

Press ▾ or ▲ to select functions or to set a numeric value, if required.

Press ✓ to select and confirm a function.

Once a main menu page is selected, this selection remains stored until another main menu page is selected. Sub-pages are changed by pressing ▾ or ▲.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre as required. Confirm messages by pressing ✓. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ 124.

### Trip/fuel Information Menu

( or Info)


The following list contains possible Menu pages. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle. Depending on the display some functions are symbolised.

Refer to the instructions above for your vehicle to access the menus.

- Digital speed.
- Trip odometer (1 or A).  
Average fuel consumption (1 or A).  
Average speed (1 or A).
- Trip odometer (2 or B).  
Average fuel consumption (2 or B).  
Average speed (2 or B).
- Fuel range.
- Fuel information.
- Remaining oil life\*.
- Fuel economy.
- Timer.

- Following distance\*.
- Eco Statistics.
- Economy index.

#### Note

\*On LT, RS and Calais Tourer (Police) display, the Remaining oil life and Following distance pages are displayed in the Vehicle information menu, select  by pressing **MENU** on the turn signal lever.

#### Digital Speed

Digital display of the instantaneous speed.



#### Trip Odometer (1/A) or (2/B)

The trip odometer displays the current distance since the last reset.

The trip odometer counts up to a distance of 9,999 km then restarts at 0.

To reset:

- Vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever: Press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.



- Vehicles with steering wheel control switches: Press  and confirm with .

The trip odometer information on pages 1 and 2 can be reset separately for the odometer, average consumption and average speed while the display for each is active.

#### Average Fuel Consumption (1/A) or (2/B)

Displays average consumption. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

To reset:



- Vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever: Press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.
- Vehicles with steering wheel control switches: Press  and confirm with .

#### Average Speed (1/A) or (2/B)

Displays average speed. The measurement can be reset at any time.




To reset:


- Vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever: Press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.
- Vehicles with steering wheel control switches: Press  and confirm with .

### Fuel Range

The range is calculated from the current fuel tank level and current consumption. The display shows average values.

After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

When the fuel level in the tank is low, a message appears on the display and  illuminates in the fuel gauge.

When the tank must be refuelled immediately, a warning message appears and remains on the display. Additionally,  flashes.

### Fuel Information

Displays the instantaneous consumption and estimated fuel range until empty.

### Remaining Oil Life

Indicates an estimate of the oil's useful life. Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 100% is displayed that means 100% of the current oil life remains.


See *Service Display* ⇨ 107.

### Fuel Economy

Displays instantaneous, average and best fuel consumption.

### Timer

To start and stop press .

To reset, press  and confirm Reset.

### Following Distance

Displays the distance in seconds to a preceding moving vehicle. If adaptive cruise control is active this page shows the following distance setting instead.

See *Following Distance Indication System* ⇨ 296.

### Eco Statistics

Displays the average consumption usage over a distance of 50 km. Filled segments display the consumption in 5 km steps and shows the effect of topography or driving behaviour on fuel consumption.

### Economy Index

The current fuel consumption is indicated on an economical scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the filled segments within the ECO area.

### ECO Information Menu

- Fuel economy.
- Economy trend.

- ECO index.

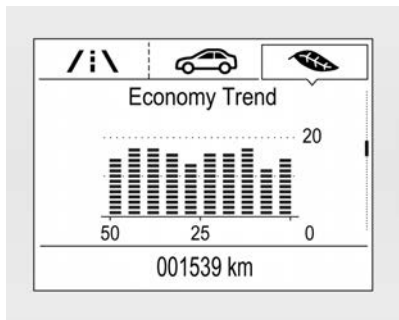
### Note

On displays except LT, RS and Calais Tourer (Police), the Economy Trend and ECO index pages are displayed in the Trip/fuel information menu. Select **Info**.

### Fuel Economy

Displays instantaneous, average and best fuel consumption.

### Economy Trend



Displays the average consumption usage over a distance of 50 km. Filled segments display the

consumption in 5 km steps and shows the effect of topography or driving behaviour on fuel consumption.

### Economy (ECO) Index

The current fuel consumption is indicated on an economical scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the filled segments within the ECO area.

The more segments filled, the higher the fuel consumption. The average consumption value is indicated simultaneously.

### VXR (Performance) Menu

The following list contains all possible Menu pages. Refer to the instructions above for your vehicle to access the menus.

- G-force.
- Friction bubble.
- Performance timer.
- Lap timer.
- Oil temperature.
- Oil pressure.

- Battery voltage.

### Audio Menu

The audio menu enables browsing for music, selecting from favourites or changing the audio source.

See *Operation* ⇨ 147 or *Operation* ⇨ 177.

### Phone Menu

The phone menu enables managing and performing of phone calls, scrolling through contacts or operating handsfree phoning.

See *Hands-Free Phone* ⇨ 168 or *Hands-Free Phone* ⇨ 225.

### Navigation Menu

The navigation menu enables route guidance.

See *Navigation System Overview* ⇨ 198.

### Vehicle Information Menu

(, Options or )

The following list contains all possible vehicle information menu pages. Some may not be available

for your particular vehicle. Depending on the display some functions are symbolised.

To select a page:

- Vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever: Turn the adjuster wheel.
- Vehicles with steering wheel control switches: Press ▾ or △.

Then follow the instructions given in the submenus.

- Display theme.
- Info pages.
- Speed warning.
- Remaining oil life\*.
- Following distance\*.
- Software information.

#### Note

\* LT, RS and Calais Tourer (Police) display only. For details see Trip/fuel Information Menu ( / ; \ or Info).

#### Display Theme

This setting is only available with the Calais-V, RS-V, VXR, Calais-V Tourer and changes the look of the display.

Press ▷ while display themes is displayed. Select Sport or Touring mode by pressing ✓.

#### Info Pages

Press ▷ while Info pages is displayed. A list of all items available in the Info and VXR Performance menu page is displayed.

Select the functions to be displayed in the Info menu page by pressing ✓.

Currently selected pages have a ✓ in a checkbox. Available functions not currently displayed have a blank checkbox. See Info Menu above.

#### Speed Warning

The speed warning display allows you to set a speed that you do not want to exceed.

To set the speed warning, press ▷ while the page is displayed. Press ▾ or △ to adjust the value. Press ✓ to set the speed.

Once the speed is set, this feature can be turned off by pressing ✓ while viewing this page.

If the selected speed limit is exceeded, a pop-up warning is displayed with a chime.

#### Software Information

Displays the open source software information.

#### Head-Up Display (HUD)

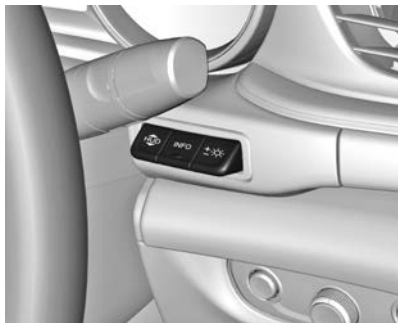
The vehicle may have a Head-Up Display (HUD) which projects vehicle operation information onto the windscreen.

The image is projected from a lens in the instrument panel onto the windscreen directly ahead in the driver's view. The image appears focused out toward the front of the vehicle.

## 122 Instruments and Controls

The head-up display information may indicate:

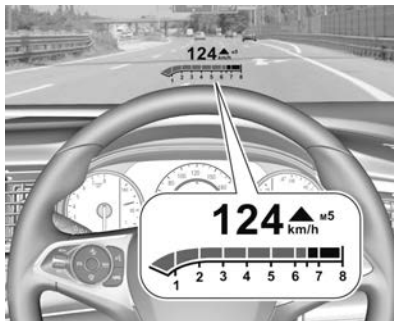
- General driving information.
- Alerts from driver assistance systems.
- Automatic transmission shift lever position.
- Gear shift indication.
- Audio and phone information.
- Turn-by-turn navigation information.



Three switches above the light control switch operate the head-up display.

### Display Views

Different views are selectable in the head-up display by pressing the INFO button. Each press will change the display view.



### Speed View

Indicates:

- **Speedometer** : Digital indication of speed.

### Performance View

Indicates:

- **Speedometer** : Digital indication of speed.

- **Tachometer** : Engine speed in revolutions per minute.
- **Automatic transmission** : Shift lever position.
- **Manual mode transmission** : Gear shift indication.
- **Auto stop** indication.

### Audio View

Indicates:

- **Speedometer** : Digital indication of speed.
- **Audio playing** information.



### Navigation View

Indicates:

- **Speedometer** : Digital indication of speed.
- **Navigation** : Turn-by-turn information.

### Active Safety Control Indicators

On all views, control indicators of following Driver assistance systems are indicated in the top line of the display:


- **Vehicle detected ahead**  : Vehicle recognition.
- **Lane keep assist**  : Status and warning.
- **Adaptive cruise control**  : set speed and status.
- **Pedestrian detected ahead**  : pedestrian recognition.

### Pop-up Alerts

The following list contains only an extract of possible alerts. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle, others can appear depending on your vehicle's configuration.


Alerts pop up on each page as required.

- Pedestrian protection alert.
- Forward collision alert.
- Up-/downshift alert.
- Incoming call.

Alerts with lower priority can be reset by pressing  , high priority alerts appear as long as the danger

remains. System messages or vehicle warnings may require immediate action. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

### Image Position Adjustment

1. Adjust the driver's seat.
2. Start the engine.
3. Press down or lift up the  button to centre the image. It can only be adjusted up and down, not side to side.



### Warning

If the HUD image is too bright or too high in your field of view, it may take you more time to see things you need to see when it is dark outside. Be sure to keep the HUD image dim and placed low in your field of view.

### Brightness Adjustment


The head-up display image will automatically dim and brighten to compensate for outside lighting.

Brightness can also be adjusted manually as desired:

- Lift up and hold  $\pm$   to brighten the display.
- Press down and hold  $\pm$   to dim the display.

The image can temporarily lighten depending on angle and position of sunlight.

### Switching Off

Hold down  $\pm$   to turn the head-up display off. Lift up to turn back on.

### Head-up Display Care

Clean the inside of the windscreen as required to remove any dirt or film that could reduce the sharpness or clarity of the head-up image.

Clean the head-up display lens in the instrument panel with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently, then dry it.

### System Limitations

The head-up display may not operate correctly when:

- The lens in the instrument panel is covered by objects, or the windscreen and lens are not clean.
- The display brightness is too dim or bright.
- The image is not adjusted to the correct height.
- The driver is wearing polarised sunglasses.

If the head-up image is not functioning for other reasons, contact a dealer. The windscreen is part of the head-up display system. See *Windows* ⇨ 42.

### Vehicle Messages

Messages are indicated in the Driver Information Centre, in some cases together with a warning and signal buzzer.



On vehicles with a MENU button in the turn signal lever, press **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever to confirm a message.



On vehicles with steering wheel controls, press ✓ to confirm a message.

### Vehicle and Service Messages

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

### Messages in the Infotainment Display

Some important messages may appear additionally in the infotainment system display. Press the multifunction knob to confirm a message. Some messages only pop up for a few seconds.

## Warning Chimes

### When Starting the Engine or Whilst Driving

Only one warning will sound at a time. The warning for a not-fastened seat belt has priority over any other warning. Depending on vehicle model, warnings may sound:

- If a seat belt is not fastened.
- If a door or the tailgate is not fully closed when starting off.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with the parking brake applied.
- If the adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically.
- If approaching a vehicle ahead too closely.
- If approaching a pedestrian ahead too closely.
- If a programmed speed or speed limit is exceeded.
- If a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre.
- If the RKE transmitter is not in the passenger compartment.

- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If an unintended lane change occurs.
- If the diesel particulate filter has reached its maximum filling level.

### When the Vehicle is Parked and/or the Driver's Door is Opened

- With exterior lights on.

### During an Autostop

- If the driver's door is opened.
- If any condition for an Autostop is not fulfilled.

## Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

1. Switch off any electricity consumers that are not required for a safe ride such as

seat heating, heated rear window or other power consumers.

2. Charge the vehicle battery by driving continuously for a while or by using a charging device.

The warning message will disappear after the engine has been started twice without a voltage drop. If the vehicle battery cannot be recharged, have the cause of the fault remedied by a dealer.

## Vehicle Personalisation

The behaviour of some vehicle functions can be personalised by changing settings in the Infotainment system.

Some of the personal settings for different drivers can be memorised individually for each vehicle key.


See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ 21.

### Note

- Depending on vehicle model and options, some functions described below may not be available.
- Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

### LT, RS



Press , select **SETTINGS** and then **Vehicle** on the touchscreen.

### Note

For a description of other Settings menu items see *Settings* ⇨ 170.

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed.

### Climate & Air Quality

- **Auto Fan Max Speed** : Modifies the cabin airflow level of the climate control system in automatic mode.

- **Auto Demist** : Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.
- **Auto Rear Demist** : Automatically activates the heated rear window.

### Collision / Detection Systems

- **Forward Collision System** : Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the forward collision alert.
- **Front Pedestrian Protection** : Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the front pedestrian protection.
- **Park Assist** : Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without a towbar.

### Comfort and Convenience

- **Chime Volume** : Changes the volume of warning chimes.



- **Hands-free Tailgate Control :**  
Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the power tailgate hands-free function.
- **Personalisation By Driver :**  
Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.
- **Rain Sense Wipers :** Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with the rain sensor.
- **Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear :**  
Activates or deactivates automatic operation of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.
- **Extended Hill Start Assist :**  
Changes between Extended Hold or Standard Hold settings.

### Lighting

- **Vehicle Locator Lights :**  
Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.
- **Exit Lighting :** Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.

### Power Door Locks

- **Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out :**  
Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.
- **Auto Door Lock :** Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after turning the ignition on.

### Remote Lock, Unlock, Start


- **Remote Unlock Light Feedback :** Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.
- **Remote Lock Feedback :**  
Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.
- **Remote Door Unlock :**  
Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking with the RKE transmitter buttons.

- **Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors :** Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.
- **Remote Window Operation :**  
Activates or deactivates open/closing of the power windows, and if fitted, closing of the sunroof with the RKE transmitter.
- **Passive Door Unlock :**  
Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking with the keyless entry function.
- **Passive Door Lock :** Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and a RKE transmitter has been removed from the vehicle.

- **Remote Left in Vehicle Alert :**  
Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the RKE transmitter remains in the vehicle.

### Except LT, RS



Press , select **SETTINGS** and then **Vehicle** on the touchscreen.

### Note

For a description of other Settings menu items see *Settings* ⇨ 229.

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed.

### Climate and Air Quality

- **Auto Fan Speed :** Modifies the cabin airflow level of the climate control system in automatic mode.
- **Auto Heated Seats :** Automatically activates the seat heating.
- **Auto Demist :** Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.
- **Auto Rear Demist :** Automatically activates the heated rear window.

### Collision / Detection Systems

- **Forward Collision System :** Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the forward collision alert.
- **Front Pedestrian Detection :** Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the front pedestrian detection.

- **Park Assist :** Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without a towbar.
- **Rear Cross Traffic Alert :** Activates or deactivates rear cross traffic alert.
- **Adaptive Cruise Go Notifier :** Activates or deactivates the reminder function of the adaptive cruise control.
- **Lane Change Alert :** Activates or deactivates lane change alert.

### Comfort and Convenience

- **Auto Memory Recall :** Activates or deactivates the memorised feature for power seat adjustment.
- **Easy Exit Driver Seat :** Activates or deactivates power seat easy exit function.
- **Chime Volume :** Changes the volume of warning chimes.

- **Hands-free Tailgate Control :** Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the power tailgate hands-free function.
- **Reverse Tilt Mirror :** Activates or deactivates and changes the exterior mirror parking assist function.
- **Auto Mirror Folding :** Activates or deactivates exterior mirror folding with the RKE transmitter.
- **Personalisation by Driver :** Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.
- **Rainsense Wipers :** Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with the rain sensor.
- **Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear :** Activates or deactivates automatic operation of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

### Lighting

- **Vehicle Locator Lights :** Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.

- **Exit Lighting :** Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.
- **Left or Right Hand Traffic :** Changes between lighting for left- or right-hand traffic.
- **Adaptive Forward Lighting :** Changes the function settings of the LED headlights.

### Power Door Locks

- **Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout :** Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.
- **Auto Door Lock :** Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function when shifting out of P (Park).

### Remote Lock, Unlock, Start

- **Remote Unlock Light Feedback :** Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.

- **Remote Lock Feedback :** Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.
- **Remote Door Unlock :** Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking with the RKE transmitter buttons.
- **Relock Remote Unlocked Doors :** Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.
- **Remote Start Auto Heat Seats :** Activates or deactivates automatic seat heating during a remote vehicle start.
- **Remote Window Operation :** Activates or deactivates open/closing of the power windows, and if fitted, closing of the sunroof with the RKE transmitter.
- **Passive Door Unlock :** Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or

the whole vehicle whilst unlocking with the keyless entry function.

- **Passive Door Lock** : Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and a RKE transmitter has been removed from the vehicle.
- **Remote Left in Vehicle Alert** : Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the RKE transmitter remains in the vehicle.

## Lighting

### Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls .....	131
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer .....	132
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) .....	132
Automatic Headlamp System .....	133
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) .....	133
Headlamp Leveling Control ...	136
Hazard Warning Flashers .....	137
Turn and Lane-Change Signals .....	137
Front Fog Lamps .....	137
Rear Fog Lights .....	138
Reverse Lamps .....	138
Misted Light Covers .....	138

### Interior Lighting

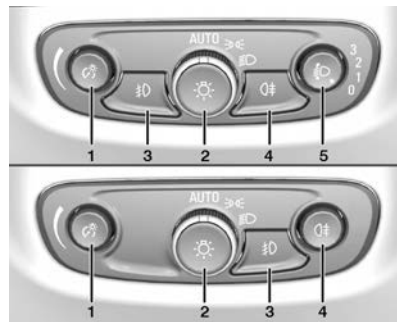
Instrument Panel Illumination Control .....	138
Interior Lamps .....	139
Reading Lamps .....	140
Sun Visor Lamps .....	140

### Lighting Features


Centre Console Lighting .....	140
Entry Lighting .....	140
Exit Lighting .....	141
Battery Power Protection .....	141

## Exterior Lighting






### Exterior Lamp Controls



Several variations of exterior lamp control switches are available depending on vehicle model. Shown are the two main variations illustrating the placement of the available functions. Your vehicle may not have all of these.

1. Instrument panel illumination . See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ 138.

### 2. Light control:


- **AUTO** : Automatic light control; switches automatically between daytime running lights and headlamps. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ 133.
  -  : Park, tail and rear number plate lamps.
  -  : Headlamps and all park lamps.
3. Front fog lamps . See *Front Fog Lamps* ⇨ 137.
4. Rear fog lamps . See *Rear Fog Lights* ⇨ 138.
5. Headlamp beam level (halogen headlamps) . See *Headlamp Leveling Control* ⇨ 136.

### Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer



Push the turn signal lever to change from low to high beam.

Pull the lever to deactivate high beam.

High beam is indicated by  on the instrument cluster.

### Headlamp Flash



To activate the headlamp flash, pull the turn signal lever and release. The headlamps will remain on for as long as the lever is pulled.

### Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

When the automatic light control switch is in the **AUTO** position, the DRL are switched on automatically during the daytime when the engine

is running. The system switches between daytime running lamps and headlamps automatically, depending on the lighting conditions.

## Automatic Headlamp System



When the automatic light control function is turned on (AUTO) and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running lamps and headlamps automatically. Operation depends on the external lighting conditions and information from the wiper system.


### Automatic Headlamp Activation

During poor lighting conditions, the headlamps are switched on. Additionally, the headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

A sensor mounted in the front-centre of the instrument panel detects ambient lighting conditions. Do not cover the sensor, otherwise the headlamps may not operate correctly.

#### Warning

The automatic headlamp sensor cannot replace the driver's personal judgement of the prevailing light conditions. For example, the sensor is unable to detect foggy conditions.

In situations such as this, set the lamp switch to , otherwise your safety and that of other road users could be endangered.

### Tunnel Detection

When a tunnel is entered, the headlamps are switched on immediately until lighting conditions return to normal.

### Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)


The vehicle may have an Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) system.

The AFL system features headlamps that contain a variety of LEDs which enable the control of different lighting programs.

Light distribution and intensity of the light are variably activated depending on lighting conditions and road type. The vehicle adapts the headlamps automatically to the current driving situation to enable optimal light performance for the driver.

Some functions of the AFL system can be deactivated or activated in the vehicle personalisation menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

## 134 Lighting

The following lighting functions are available with the light control switch in the AUTO or  position.

### Town Light



Activated automatically at a speed up to approx. 55 km/h and in situations with low exterior ambient light.

The light is wide and symmetrical. The special beam pattern is designed to avoid glare for other road users.

### Country Light



Activated automatically at a speed above approx. 55 km/h when driving in rural areas.

The illumination of the current lane and the side of the road is improved, reducing glare to oncoming and preceding vehicles.

### Curve Light



Particular LEDs, based on steering angle and speed, are additionally activated to improve lighting in curves.

This function is activated at speeds from 40 km/h to 70 km/h and reacts to steering angle.

### Corner Light



When turning a corner, depending on the steering angle and turn signal lamp direction, particular LEDs are activated which illuminate the direction of travel.

It is activated up to a speed of 40 km/h.

### Reverse Parking Function

To assist the driver's orientation when parking, both corner lamps and reverse lamps illuminate when the headlamps are on and reverse gear is engaged.

They remain illuminated for a short time after disengaging reverse gear or until driving faster than 7 km/h in a forward gear.



## High Beam Assist

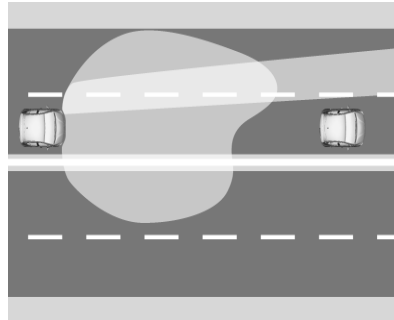
This feature allows the high beam to function as the main driving light at night.

The camera in the windscreen detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles. Each LED in the headlamps on the right or left side can be activated or faded out according to the traffic situation.

This gives the best light distribution without glare for other road users.

Once activated, high beam assist remains active and switches high beam on and off depending on surrounding conditions.

The current setting of the high beam assist will remain after the ignition is switched on again.



High beam assist includes a special freeway mode.


When driving faster than 115 km/h on freeways, the light beam becomes smaller to avoid glare to oncoming traffic. When following vehicles ahead or passing, mirror glare for these vehicles is reduced.

### Warning



It is the responsibility of the driver to always comply with local posted speed limits.

## Activation



Activate high beam assist by pressing  once.

High beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 50 km/h. High beam is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but high beam assist remains active.

The green indicator  illuminates continuously in the instrument cluster when high beam assist is activated. The blue indicator  illuminates when high beam is on.


Pushing the turn signal indicator lever once switches on manual high beam without high beam assist.


High beam assist switches automatically to low beam when:

- Driving in urban areas.
- The camera detects heavy fog.
- Front fog lamps are switched on.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

### Deactivation

If high beam assist is active and high beam is on, press  once or pull indicator lever once to deactivate high beam assist.

If high beam assist is active and high beam is off, press  once to deactivate high beam assist.

Pushing the turn signal indicator lever to activate manual high beam will also deactivate high beam assist.

### Headlamp Flash in Conjunction with High Beam Assist

Headlamp flash by pulling the turn signal indicator lever once will not deactivate high beam assist when high beam is off.

Headlamp flash by pulling the turn signal indicator lever once deactivates high beam assist when high beam is on.

### Dynamic Automatic Headlamp Levelling

To prevent glare to oncoming traffic, headlamp levelling is automatically adjusted based on vehicle inclination information measured by the front and rear axle, acceleration or deceleration and vehicle speed.

### Faults


If the system detects a failure in the AFL system, it selects a preset position to avoid glare to oncoming traffic.

A warning is displayed in the driver information centre.

### Headlamp Leveling Control



The headlamp beam level can be adjusted according to vehicle load and to prevent glare to oncoming drivers.

Push  and then turn to the desired position.

**0** : Front seats occupied.

**1** : All seats occupied.


**2** : All seats occupied and load compartment laden.

**3** : Driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden.

For vehicles with adaptive forward lighting system, refer to Dynamic Automatic Headlight levelling, see *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)*

⇨ 133.

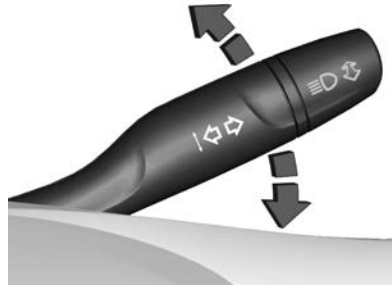
## Hazard Warning Flashers

Operated by pressing .



In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the hazard warning flashers are activated automatically.

## Turn and Lane-Change Signals



**Lever up** : Left turn signal

**Lever down** : Right turn signal

A resistance point can be felt when moving the turn signal lever. Constant flashing is activated when the lever is moved beyond the resistance point.

It is deactivated when the steering wheel is turned in the opposite direction, or the lever is manually returned to the neutral position.

Temporary flashing is activated by holding the lever just before the resistance point. The turn signal lights will flash until the lever is released.

To activate three flashes automatically, tap the lever briefly without passing the resistance point. If a trailer is connected, the turn signal lights flash six times and tone frequency changes.

## Front Fog Lamps



Operated by pressing .

## 138 Lighting


When the light control switch is in the AUTO position, turning on the front fog lamps will turn the headlamps on automatically.

The front fog lamps should only be used in very bad visibility conditions such as fog, snow or heavy rain.


### Rear Fog Lights



The vehicle has one rear fog lamp.

Operated by pressing .

When the light control switch is in the AUTO position, turning on the rear fog lamp will turn the headlamps on automatically.

When the light control switch is in the  position, the rear fog lamp can only be turned on with the front fog lamps.

The rear fog lamp should only be used in very bad visibility conditions such as fog, snow or heavy rain.

### Reverse Lamps

The reverse lamps illuminate when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

### Misted Light Covers



The inside of a light housing may mist-up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself. To help switch on the headlights.

## Interior Lighting

### Instrument Panel Illumination Control




Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted.

They illuminate when the light control switch is in the AUTO position and the light sensor detects night conditions, or in  or  positions.

- Instrument panel illumination
- Infotainment display

- Illuminated switches and operation elements

Push  and then turn until the desired brightness is obtained.

## Interior Lamps


During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically turn on and then off after a delay.

### Note


In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

### Front Courtesy Light



 **ON/OFF** : Press to turn the interior lights on or off manually.

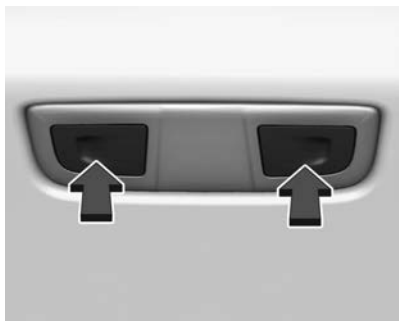


 **OFF** : Press to deactivate the interior lights. Deactivation is indicated by an LED in the switch.

### Rear Courtesy Lights

Illuminate in conjunction with the front courtesy light.

## Reading Lamps



The front and rear reading lights are operated by pressing the light.

## Sun Visor Lamps



Illuminates when the cover is opened.

## Lighting Features

### Centre Console Lighting

A spotlight incorporated in the front interior lights illuminates when the headlights are turned on.

### Entry Lighting

Depending on vehicle model, the following lights are turned on for a short time when unlocking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter:

- Headlights.
- Puddle lights in both outside mirrors.
- Tail lamps.
- Number plate lights.
- Instrument panel lights.
- Interior lights.

Some functions are only operable when it is dark outside to facilitate locating the vehicle.

The lighting turns off immediately when the ignition is turned on.

This function can be activated or deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

The settings can be saved for the RKE transmitter being used. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ 21.

The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- Illumination of some switches.
- Driver information centre.
- Door pocket lights.

## Exit Lighting

Depending on vehicle model, the following lights will turn on when the ignition is turned off:

- Interior lights.
- Instrument panel lights.
- Puddle lights in both outside mirrors.

They will switch off automatically after a delay. This function works only in the dark.

Interior lighting is activated if the driver's door is opened during this time.

## Path Lighting

Headlights, tail lamps and number plate lights illuminate the surrounding area for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

### Activation

Path lighting is activated, when the ignition is turned off and the driver's door is opened.

Path lighting can be activated or deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

The settings can be saved for the RKE transmitter being used. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ 21.

## Battery Power Protection

This function guarantees longest vehicle battery life via an alternator with controllable power output and optimised power distribution.

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when driving, the following systems are reduced automatically in two stages and finally switched off:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated mirrors.
- Heated seats.
- Fan.

In the second stage, a message confirming the activation of the vehicle battery discharge protection will be displayed in the driver information centre.

## Automatic Lights Off

To prevent discharge of the vehicle's battery when the ignition is off, some interior lights are turned off automatically after a period of time.

# Infotainment System

## MyLink

### Introduction

Introduction .....	143
Theft-Deterrent Feature .....	144
Overview .....	145
Operation .....	147

### Radio

AM-FM Radio .....	152
-------------------	-----

### Audio Players

USB .....	156
Bluetooth Audio .....	161

### Voice Recognition

Voice Recognition .....	164
-------------------------	-----

### Phone

Bluetooth .....	164
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto .....	168
Hands-Free Phone .....	168

### Settings

Settings .....	170
----------------	-----

## MyLink with Built-in Navigation

### Introduction

Introduction .....	172
Theft-Deterrent Feature .....	173
Overview .....	174
Operation .....	177

### Radio

AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB) .....	190
------------------------------	-----

### Audio Players

USB .....	193
Bluetooth Audio .....	196

### Navigation

Navigation System Overview .....	198
Using the Navigation System .....	198
Enter Destination .....	205
Guidance .....	211

### Voice Recognition

Voice Recognition (General Information) .....	214
Voice Recognition (Usage) ...	216

## Phone

Bluetooth .....	219
Text Messaging .....	221
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto .....	224
Hands-Free Phone .....	225

## Settings

Settings .....	229
----------------	-----



## Introduction

Two infotainment systems are available for this vehicle:

- MyLink (without built-in navigation).
- MyLink with Built-in Navigation.

The following pages describe the features and operation of the MyLink system. For vehicles fitted with the MyLink with Built-in Navigation system, see *Introduction* ⇨ 172.

Read the following pages to become familiar with these features.

### Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle  
(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The MyLink infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These functions may grey out when they are unavailable.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation and infotainment display controls.
- Set up the audio by presetting favourite stations and tone.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or by using a single voice command using Bluetooth® phone capability.

To play the infotainment system with the ignition off, see *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ 245.

## General Information

The infotainment system provides infotainment in your car, using the latest technology.

The radio can be easily used by registering up to 25 FM or AM stations with the Preset function.

The infotainment system can play USB storage devices, smartphones or MP3 players.

Using the phone projection function, you can operate specific applications on your smartphone via the infotainment system.

The Bluetooth phone connection function allows for the use of wireless hands-free phone calls, as well as a phone music player.

- The "Overview" section provides a simple overview of the infotainment system's functions and summary of all regulatory devices.
- The "Operation" section explains the basic controls for the infotainment system.

- Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.
- Some of the radio features may be limited when ignition is off.

### **Theft-Deterrent Feature**

The Infotainment system has an electronic security system to prevent theft.

Therefore, the infotainment system will only function in the vehicle in which it was first installed and cannot be used in another vehicle.

## Overview

### Control Panel



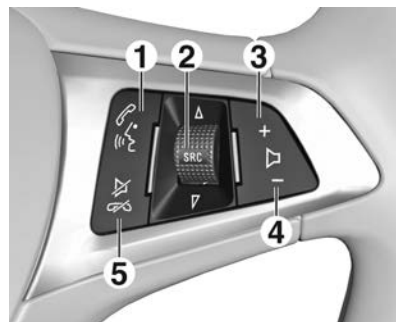
1. Display / Touchscreen.
2. Home menu. Touchscreen buttons for:
  - Audio: Audio functions.
  - Gallery: Picture and movie functions.
  - Phone: Mobile phone functions.
  - Projection: Phone projection (Apple CarPlay / Android Auto).
  - Settings: System settings.
  - Climate: Climate control functions.
  - Driving Mode: Interactive drive control system settings.
3. Time, Date and Outside temperature.
4. Phone 📞:
  - Press to access the Phone menu. (If there is no connected phone, the display will show the Device Management menu to allow

- you to connect a previously paired phone or establish a new Bluetooth enabled phone connection).
- Press and hold to activate speech recognition.
5. Seek ▶▶:
    - Press to seek the next radio station or media track.
    - Press and hold to seek up radio stations or fast forward media.
  6. Power ⏻ / Volume:
    - Press and hold to turn the power on/off.
    - Press to turn the mute function on/off.
    - Rotate to adjust the volume.
  7. Seek ◀◀:
    - Press to seek the previous radio station or media track.

- Press and hold to seek down radio stations or fast rewind media.

8. Home 🏠:
  - Press to enter the home menu.
  - Press and hold to open the phone projection (Apple CarPlay / Android Auto).

### Steering Wheel Remote Control





1. Call :

- When there is no connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Executes the Bluetooth device connection.
- When there is a connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Press to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.  
  
If the connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold to activate the phone's speech recognition mode.


2. SRC (Source):

Press to change the source, e.g. AM, FM, USB, etc.


Rotate ( / ) to select the next or previous:

- Radio mode: preset radio station.
- Audio mode: track / chapter / picture.


- Phone mode: call list entry when the call list is open.

3. Volume  + :

Press + to increase the volume.

4. Volume  - :

Press - to decrease the volume.


5. Mute/Hang up :


Press in any music play mode to turn the mute function on and off.

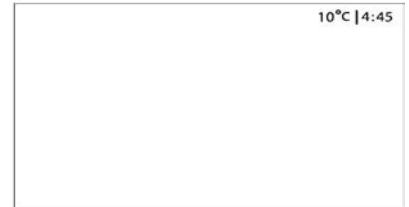
Press to reject incoming calls, or to finish your current call, or to end speech recognition mode.

## Operation

### System On/Off

- Press  on the control panel to turn the power on. The last function will be executed.

- Press and hold  on the control panel to turn the power off. The time and temperature will be shown on the screen.



### Note


The time and temperature are displayed when the ignition is on.

### Turning On/Off Automatically

When the ignition is in accessory or on, the infotainment system is turned on automatically.

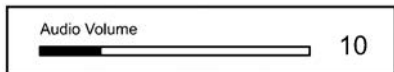
When the ignition is off and the driver's door is opened, the infotainment system is turned off automatically.


### Note

If  is pressed and held when the ignition is off, the infotainment system is turned on for approximately 10 minutes.

### Volume Control


Rotate the volume knob on the control panel to adjust the volume. The current sound volume is indicated.



- Using the steering wheel remote control, press +  - to adjust the volume.

- Turning on the infotainment system will set the volume level to its previous selection (when it is less than the maximum starting volume).
- If the volume level is louder than maximum starting volume level when the infotainment system is turned on, the sound level is adjusted automatically to maximum starting volume level.


### Speed Compensated Volume

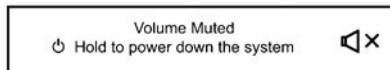
Press  and then select Settings. Select Radio, scroll through the list and then select Auto Volume.

To adjust the degree of volume adaptation, select one of the options in the list.


- Off: no enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.
- High: maximum enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.

### MUTE

Press  on the control panel to turn the mute function on and off.



### Using Home Menu

1. Press  on the control panel. The Home menu may vary depending on the vehicle option.



2. Touch the desired menu button (icon).

**Note**

Not all menu icons may be available on your vehicle.

- **Audio** to select AM/ FM/ USB/ Bluetooth music input.
- **Gallery** to view a picture or movie.
- **Phone** to activate phone features (if connected).
- **Projection** to activate Android Auto or Apple Carplay.


If a compatible smartphone is already connected to the USB port, the Projection icon will be replaced with Android Auto or Apple Carplay icons.

- **Settings** to enter the system setup menu.
- **Climate** to select the climate control system functions.
- **Driving Mode** to select the interactive driving mode functions.

Refer below for further details.

**Selecting Functions**

**Audio**

1. Press  on the control panel.
2. Touch **Audio** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Source** on the screen.




- Touch **AM** to select AM radio.
- Touch **FM** to select FM radio.
- Touch **USB** to select USB music.

**Note**


When an iPod is connected to the USB port, 'USB' changes to 'iPod'. Select iPod to play music on the device.

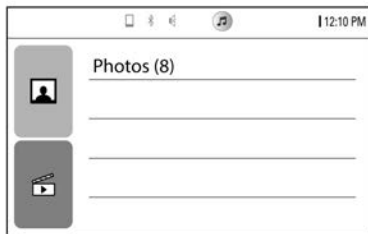
- Touch **Bluetooth** to select Bluetooth music.



### Note

- Press  to return to the Home menu.
- If the playback source (iPod/ USB/ Bluetooth) is not connected to the infotainment system, this function is not available.
- Audio source availability may vary depending on region or vehicle features.
- An additional USB device can be supported by attaching an external USB hub from the single USB port.
- We don't recommend using a USB hub with two iPhone/iPod devices.


### Gallery

1. Press  on the control panel.
2. Touch **Gallery** on the Home menu.





- Touch  to view picture files contained in the USB storage device.
- Touch  to view movie files contained in the USB storage device.

### Note

- Press  to return to the HOME menu.
- If the playback source (USB (picture) / USB (movie) is not connected to the Infotainment system, this function is not available.


### Phone

To operate Bluetooth hands-free function, connect the Bluetooth phone to the Infotainment system.

1. Press  on the control panel.
2. Touch **Phone** on the Home menu. Or touch  on the control panel or steering wheel control switch.



### Note

- Press  to return to the Home menu.




- If your Bluetooth phone is not connected to the Infotainment system, this function is not available. For details, refer to the “Pairing and connecting Bluetooth” of the “Phone” section.

### Projection

The phone projection applications Android Auto and Apple CarPlay display selected apps from your smartphone on the infotainment screen and allow their operation directly via the infotainment controls.

### Settings

1. Press  on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings** on the Home menu.




### Note

- An ON setting is displayed as:



An OFF setting is displayed as:



- Press  to return to the Home menu.

### Climate


Displays the Climate Setting Menu and provides on-screen adjustment of the climate control system. See *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ 233.

### Driving Mode

Displays the Driving Mode screen and provides settings for the interactive drive control system. See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ 265.

### Managing Home Page Icons

1. Touch and hold any of the Home page icons to enter edit mode.
2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.

- To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the screen towards the desired page.
- Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.
- Press  to exit edit mode.


### Note

- The Edit Mode exits after 30 seconds of inactivity.
- The maximum number of pages in edit mode is three.

## Radio


### AM-FM Radio

#### Listening to FM/AM Radio


- Press  on the control panel.
- Touch **Audio** on the Home menu.
- Touch **Source** on the screen.
- Touch **FM** or **AM** on the screen. The FM or AM radio band of the station most recently listened to is displayed.




### Note

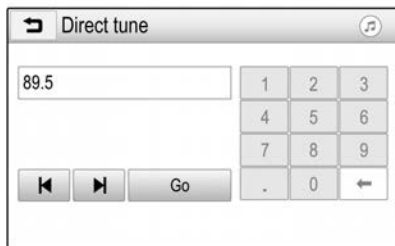
- Press  to return to the HOME menu.

#### Searching for Broadcasting Automatically

Touch  on the control panel to automatically search for an available station with good reception.

#### Searching for Broadcasting Directly

- Touch  Tune on the screen.
- Touch the desired frequency.
- Touch **Go**.



### Note

Touching “.” between digits is not necessary. The radio will add it automatically at the correct location.

## Searching for Broadcasting Using Preset

### Saving a PRESET

1. Select the band (FM or AM) to store a station into.
2. Select the desired station.
3. Touch  $\langle / \rangle$  to select the desired page of saved favourites.



4. Touch and hold any PRESET to save the current radio station to that PRESET on the selected favourites page.
  - Up to 5 favourites pages can be saved, and each page can store up to five radio stations.

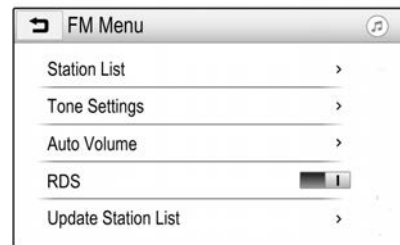
### Listening to a PRESET Directly

1. Repeatedly touch  $\langle / \rangle$  to select the desired page of saved favourites.
2. Touch the PRESET to directly listen to the radio station saved to that PRESET.

## Using the FM/AM Menu

### General Operation of the Menu

1. Select the desired band (FM or AM).
2. Touch **Menu** on the FM/AM radio screen.



3. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.
4. Touch  $\curvearrowright$  to return to the previous menu.

### Station List

1. From the FM/AM menu, touch the **Station List** to display the FM/AM station list.

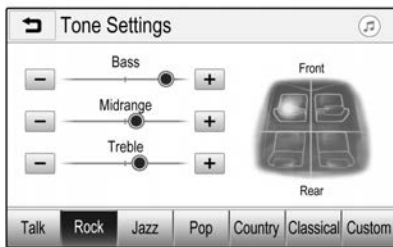
The station list information is displayed.

2. Scroll through the list using ▲ / ▼. Tune to the desired station by selecting it.

### Tone Settings

From Tone Settings menu, sound features can be set.

1. From the FM/AM menu, touch **Tone settings** to enter Sound Setup mode. The tone settings menu is displayed.



- Touch -/+ to select the desired sound style manually.
- Bass : Adjust the bass level from -12 to +12.
- Mid (Midrange) : Adjust the midrange level from -12 to +12.
- Treble : Adjust the treble level from -12 to +12.
- Fade : Adjust the front/rear speaker balance by dragging the round cursor up or down over the vehicle interior image.

- Balance : Adjust the left/right speaker balance by dragging the round cursor left or right over the vehicle interior image.
- EQ (Equaliser) : Select or turn off the sound style. (Talk, Rock, Jazz, Pop, Country, Classical, Custom)

2. Touch .

### Auto Volume

When Auto Volume is turned on, the volume will automatically be controlled according to the vehicle speed to offset the noise from the engine and tyres.

1. From the FM/AM menu, touch the **Auto Volume**.
2. Select the desired option. (Off/ Low/Medium-Low/Medium/ Medium-High/High)

### Radio Data System (RDS)

RDS is a service of FM stations that facilitates the finding of a desired station and its fault-free reception.

#### Advantages of RDS:

- On the display, the program name of the station appears instead of its frequency.
- During a station search, the infotainment system tunes to RDS stations only.
- Depending on the station that is received, the infotainment system displays additional text that can contain information about the current program, for example.

#### Setting the RDS function.

1. From the FM menu, select on or off.

#### Update Station List

1. From the FM/AM menu, press **Update Station List**. The FM/AM broadcasting list update will proceed.
2. During the FM/AM broadcasting list update, touch **Cancel** to stop it from saving changes.

#### Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power/USB outlet.

If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power/USB outlet.

#### FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km.

Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

#### AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night.

The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception.

When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

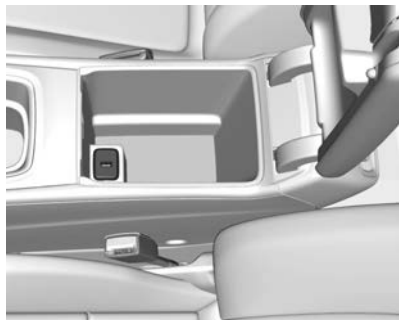
#### Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage can cause interference with the vehicle's radio.

## Audio Players

### USB

#### USB Port



A USB port for the connection of external devices is located in the centre console.

USB ports for charging only are provided in the back of the centre console. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ 97.

#### Note

Not all devices are supported by the infotainment system.

#### Connecting/Disconnecting a Device

Devices such as an MP3 player, USB drive, SD card (via USB connector/adaptor) or smartphone can be connected to the USB port. Up to two USB devices can be connected to the infotainment system at a time.

#### Note

For the connection of two USB devices, an external USB hub is required.

The infotainment system can play audio files, display picture files or play movie files contained in the USB storage device. When connected to the USB port, various functions of the devices mentioned above can be operated via the controls and menus.

When connecting the device use a genuine connection cable.

If a non-readable USB device is connected, a corresponding error message is displayed and the infotainment system automatically switches to the previous function.

To disconnect the USB device, select another function and then remove the USB storage device.


#### Caution

Avoid disconnecting the device during playback. This may damage the device or the infotainment system.

#### USB Auto Launch

By default, the USB audio menu is displayed automatically as soon as a USB device is connected containing music files.

If desired, this function can be deactivated.

Press  and then select **Settings** to open the settings menu. Select **Radio**, scroll to **USB Auto Launch** and touch the screen button next to the function. To reactivate the function, touch the screen button again.

## File Formats and Folders

The maximum capacity of a device supported by the infotainment system amounts to 2500 music files, 2500 picture files, 250 movie files, 2500 folders and 10 stages of folder structure.

Only devices formatted in the FAT16/FAT32 file system are supported.

If there are images included in the audio meta data, these images are displayed on the screen.

### Note

Some files may not be played properly. This may be due to a different recording format or the condition of the file. Files from online shops to which Digital Rights Management (DRM) has been applied cannot be played.

The infotainment system can play the following audio, picture and movie files stored on external devices.

## Audio Files

The playable audio file formats are: MP3 (MPEG-1 Layer 3, MPEG-2 Layer 3), WMA, ALAC OGG WAF (PCM), AIFF, 3GPP (audio only), Audio Books and LPCM. iPod® and iPhone® devices play ALAC, AIFF, Audio Books and LPCM.

When playing a file with ID3 tag information, the infotainment system can display information, e.g. on the track title and artist.

## Picture Files

The displayable picture file formats are: JPG, JPEG, BMP, PNG and GIF.

JPG files must be 64 to 5000 pixels in width and 64 to 5000 pixels in height. BMP, PNG and GIF files must be 64 to 1024 pixels in width and 64 to 1024 pixels in height.

The pictures should not exceed a file size of 1MB.

## Movie Files

The playable movie file formats are AVI and MP4.

## Playing USB Music Files

Connect the USB device containing the music files to the USB port.

- Once the infotainment system finishes reading the information on the USB storage device, it will be automatically played. (If you set the USB Auto Launch to off in Settings, it will not be automatically played.)
- If a non-readable USB storage device is connected, then an error message will appear and the infotainment system will be automatically switched to the previous audio function.



#### Note

If the USB storage device is already connected, press **u** > **Audio** > **Source** > **USB** to play the USB music files.

#### Ending Playback

1. Touch **Source**.
2. Select another function by touching the **AM**, **FM**, **USB** or **Bluetooth**.

#### Note

Before removing the USB storage device, select another function, and then remove the USB storage device.

#### Pause

Touch **II** during playback.

Touch **▶** to resume playback.

#### Playing the Next File

Touch **▶▶** to play the next file.

#### Playing the Previous File

Touch **◀◀** within 5 seconds of playback time to play the previous file.

#### Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch **◀◀** after 5 seconds of playback time.

#### Scanning Forwards or Backwards

Hold down **◀◀** / **▶▶** during playback to rewind or fast-forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

#### Playing Files Randomly

Touch **⌘** during playback.

- **⌘** : Plays all files randomly.

- **↺** : Returns to normal playback.

#### USB Music Menu

1. Touch **Menu** on the USB music screen.
2. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.
3. Touch **↶** to return to the previous menu.

#### Browse Music

1. From the USB music menu, Touch **Browse Music**.

The number of relevant songs is displayed by all Playlists/Artists/Albums/Songs/Genres/More.

2. Touch the desired music.

#### Note

The infotainment system recognises playlist files by the case-insensitive extensions ".asx", ".m3u", ".pls", ".wpl", "b4s", and ".xspf".



### Tone Settings

From the USB menu, sound features can be adjusted. For details, refer to the “Tone settings” in the “FM/AM Menu”. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 152.

### Auto Volume

Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the “Auto Volume” in the “FM/AM Menu”. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 152.

### Gallery (Pictures)

The infotainment system can display picture files contained in the USB storage device.

#### Note

Picture and movie function are not supported for iPhone.



#### Note

- The following file extensions are supported: '\*.jpg', '\*.bmp', '\*.png', '\*.gif' (Animated GIF is not supported.)
- Some files may not operate due to a different format or the condition of the file.

#### Viewing a Picture

1. Connect the USB storage device to the USB port.  
The picture will be displayed.

2. Touch the screen to hide the control bar. Touch the screen again to show the control bar again, touch ↶ to return to the previous screen.

#### Note

- If the USB storage device is already connected, touch ↶ > **Gallery** > 👤 to view the picture files.
- For your safety, some features are disabled while your vehicle is in motion.

#### Slide Show

From the picture screen, touch 📺.

- The slide show will be played.
- Touch the screen to cancel the slideshow during slideshow playback.

#### Previous or Next Picture

Touch < or > to view previous or next picture.

### Rotating a Picture

Touch  to rotate the picture.

### Enlarging a Picture

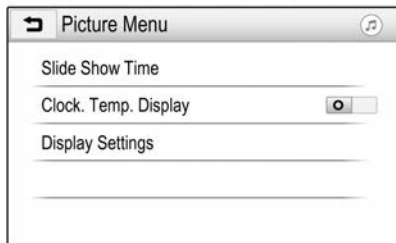
Touch  to enlarge the picture.

### Full Screen

Touch **Fit** to view to full screen.  
Touch **Fit** again to return to the previous screen.


### Picture Menu

1. From the picture screen, touch **MENU**. The USB picture menu is displayed.



2. Touch the desired menu.



- **Slide Show Time:** Select the slide show interval.
- **Clock. Temp. Display:** To display the clock and temperature on the full screen, select On or Off.
- **Display Settings:** Adjust the Brightness and Contrast.

3. After the setting is complete, touch .


### Gallery (Movies)

The Infotainment system can play movie files contained in the USB storage device.

### Playing a Movie File


1. Connect the USB storage device containing the movie file to the USB port.
2. Press  > **Gallery** >  and select a movie file. The movie will be played.




3. Touch the screen to hide the control bar. Touch the screen again to show the control bar again, touch  to return to the previous screen.

### Pause


Touch  during playback.

Touch  to resume playback.


### Playing the Next Movie

Touch  to play the next movie.



### Playing the Previous Movie

Touch  within 5 seconds of playback time to play the previous movie.

### Returning to the Beginning of the Current Movie

Touch  after 5 seconds of playback time.

### Scanning Forwards or Backwards

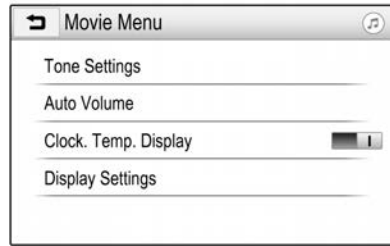
Hold down  /  during playback to rewind or fast-forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

### Full Screen

From the movie screen, touch **Fit** to view full screen. Touch **Fit** again to return to the previous screen.

### USB Movie Menu


1. From the movie screen, touch **MENU**. The USB movie menu is displayed.



2. Touch the desired menu.

- **Tone Settings:** Set the sound feature. For details, refer to the “Tone settings (FM/AM menu)” of the “AM-FM Radio” section.
- **Auto Volume:** Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the “Auto Volume” of the “AM-FM Radio” section.
- **Clock. Temp. Display:** To display the clock and temperature on the full screen, select On or Off.

- **Display Settings:** Adjust the Brightness and Contrast.

3. After the setting is complete, touch .

## Bluetooth Audio

Music may be played from a paired and connected Bluetooth device. For help pairing the device see *Bluetooth* ⇨ 164.

### Before Playing Bluetooth Music

- Bluetooth music can be played through the infotainment system only when a Bluetooth device has been connected. To play Bluetooth music, connect the Bluetooth device to the infotainment system.
- Supported profiles: A2DP, AVRCP.
- Bluetooth music may not be supported depending on the mobile phone or Bluetooth device.

- A musical note icon (🎵) will appear on the screen if the Bluetooth device is successfully connected.
- If the Bluetooth is disconnected while playing music, the music is discontinued.
- For Bluetooth music to play, the music must at least be played once from the music player mode of the device.

### Playing Bluetooth Music

1. Press 🏠 on the control panel.
2. Touch **Audio** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Source** on the screen.
4. Touch **Bluetooth** to select the connected Bluetooth music play mode.



#### Note

If the Bluetooth device is not connected, then this function cannot be selected.

#### Pause

Touch **II** during playback. Touch **▶** again to resume playback.

#### Playing the Next Track

Touch **▶▶** to play the next music.

#### Playing the Previous Track

Touch **◀◀** within 2 seconds of playback time to play the previous music.

### Returning to the Beginning of the Current Track

Touch **◀◀** after 2 seconds of playback time.

### Search

Hold down **◀◀** or **▶▶** to fast forward or rewind.

### Playing Music Randomly

Touch **🔀** during playback.


- **🔀** : Plays all files randomly.
- **🔀** : Returns to normal playback.

#### Note

Some functions may not be supported depending on the mobile phone.

### Bluetooth Music Menu

1. Touch **Menu** on the Bluetooth music screen.
2. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.

3. Touch  to return to the previous menu.

### Browse Music

1. From the Bluetooth music menu, Touch **Browse Music**. The number of relevant songs is displayed by all Playlists/Artists/Albums/Songs/Genres/More. The items may vary depending on the mobile phone.
2. Touch the desired music.

### Note

This function may not be supported depending on the mobile phone.

### Tone Settings

From the Bluetooth music menu, sound features can be adjusted. For details, refer to the “Tone settings” in the “FM/AM Menu”. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 152.

### Auto Volume

Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the “Auto Volume” in the “FM/AM Menu”. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 152.

### Caution Playing Bluetooth Music

- Do not change the track too quickly when playing Bluetooth music.
- It takes some time to transmit data from the mobile phone to the infotainment system. The infotainment system outputs the audio from the Bluetooth device as it is transmitted.
- If the Bluetooth device is not in the idle screen mode, it may not automatically play even though it is in Bluetooth music play mode.
- The infotainment system transmits the order to play from the mobile phone in the Bluetooth music play mode. If this is done in a different mode, then the device transmits the order to stop. Depending on the mobile phone's options, this order to play/stop may some take time to activate.

- If Bluetooth music playback is not functioning, check to see if the mobile phone is in the idle screen mode.
- Sometimes, sounds may be cut off during the Bluetooth music playback.

## Voice Recognition



### General Information

The voice pass-thru application of the infotainment system allows access to the voice recognition commands on your smartphone.


See your smartphone manufacturer's operating instructions to find out whether your smartphone supports this feature. In order to use the voice pass-thru application, the smartphone must be connected to the infotainment system via a USB cable or Bluetooth.

### Usage


#### Activating Voice Recognition

Press and hold  on the control panel or  on the steering wheel to start a speech recognition session. A voice command message is displayed.

As soon as a beep is heard, you can say a command. For information on the commands supported, see the operating instructions for your smartphone.

Adjusting the volume of voice prompts Turn  on the control panel or press + / - on the right side of the steering wheel to increase or decrease the volume of voice prompts.

#### Deactivating Speech Recognition

Press  on the steering wheel. The voice command message disappears and the speech recognition session is ended.

## Phone

### Bluetooth

#### General Information

The Phone portal allows you to have mobile phone conversations via a vehicle microphone and the vehicle speakers as well as operating the most important mobile phone functions via the infotainment system in the vehicle.

To use the phone portal, the mobile phone must be connected to the infotainment system via Bluetooth®.

Not all phone functions are supported by every mobile phone. The usable phone functions depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. You can find further information on this in the operating instructions for your mobile phone, or you can enquire about them with your network provider.

 **Danger**

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

 **Warning**

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

**Understanding Bluetooth Wireless Technology**

Bluetooth wireless technology establishes a wireless link between two devices supported with Bluetooth.

Terminology:

- **Pairing:** To create a secure link between the infotainment system and a Bluetooth device. Multiple devices can be paired and retained in the infotainment system.
- **Connection:** A previously paired device can be connected which enables the Bluetooth functions to be used, such as hands-free phone, audio, etc. One device can be connected at a time.

After the initial pairing, the device can connect automatically to the infotainment system each time you turn them on.

Bluetooth allows wireless transmission of information within close range by using 2.45 GHz frequency short-distance wireless telecommunication technologies.


**Note**



- There may be restrictions on using Bluetooth wireless technology in some locations.
- Due to the variety of Bluetooth devices and their firmware versions, your device may respond differently when performing over Bluetooth.
- Any inquiries regarding your phone's Bluetooth functionality, refer to the device manual.

**Pairing and Connecting Bluetooth**

To use the Bluetooth feature, make sure the Bluetooth on your device is turned on and your device is in discoverable mode. Refer to the user guide for the Bluetooth device.

**With No Currently Paired Device**


1. Press  on the control panel.

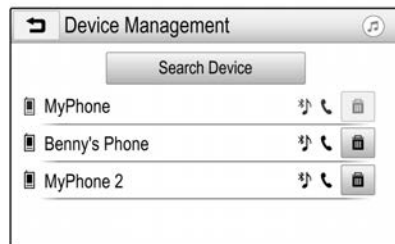
2. Touch **Phone** on the Home menu.  
Or touch  on the control panel.  
Or touch  on the steering wheel remote control.
3. Touch Search Device to search for Bluetooth phones.
4. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
  - If the SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) is supported, touch Yes or Pair on the pop-up screen of the your Bluetooth device and infotainment system.
  - If SSP is not supported, input the PIN code on your Bluetooth device as shown on the screen.
5. When your Bluetooth device and infotainment system is successfully paired, the Phone screen is displayed on the infotainment system.



If the connection fails, failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.





### With a Currently Paired Device

1. Press  on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth > Device Management**.



4. Touch the device you wish to pair from the “Device Management” screen, and then follow step 6. To add a device not in the list, touch **Search Device**.
5. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
  - If the SSP is supported, touch **Yes** or **Pair** on the pop-up screen of the your Bluetooth device and infotainment system.



- If SSP is not supported, input the PIN code on your Bluetooth device as shown on the screen.
6. When your Bluetooth device and the infotainment system is successfully paired,  /  is displayed on the Device Management screen.
- The  mark indicates that only the hands-free function is enabled.
  - The  mark indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.


**Note**

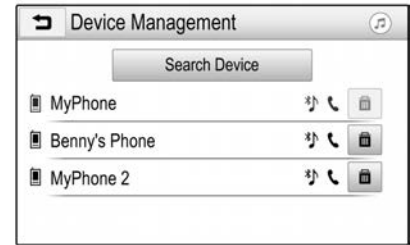
- If supported by the phone, the phone book is automatically downloaded when your Bluetooth phone is successfully paired with the infotainment system.
- If it is not automatically downloaded, proceed with the phone book download on your phone. It is recommended that

you always accept the phone book request during the initial pairing of the phone.

- The infotainment system can pair up to ten Bluetooth devices.
- If the connection fails, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.
- If the Phone book lists are more than 5000, the infotainment system does not guarantee proper listing of remaining Phone book entries.
- Depending on the Phone book entries, pairing time may vary.


**Checking/Changing Connected Bluetooth Devices**

1. Press  on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth > Device Management**.



4. The connected device will be shown.
5. If desired, select a different previously paired device from the list.



**Disconnecting the Bluetooth Device**

1. Press  on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth > Device Management**.
4. Touch the name of the device you wish to disconnect.

5. Touch **Disconnect**. The phone will remain in the device list.

### Deleting the Bluetooth Device

If you no longer need to use the Bluetooth device, you can delete it.

1. Press  on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth > Device Management**.
4. Touch .
5. Touch Delete.

### Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

#### Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

Apple CarPlay™ and/or Android Auto™ capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. The radio screen will indicate a PROJECTION ICON on the HOME screen.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Apple iPhone® or Android™ Phone by using a genuine phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use your device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.

#### Note

Ensure SIRI is activated on your iPhone.

The PROJECTION icon on the HOME screen will change to Android Auto™ or Apple CarPlay™ depending on the phone. Apple CarPlay and/or Android Auto may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, press the APPLE CARPLAY and/or ANDROID AUTO icon on the HOME screen to launch.

For further information on how to set up Apple CarPlay and Android Auto in the vehicle, see [www.holden.com.au](http://www.holden.com.au).

CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. For further information, support and compatible devices, see [www.apple.com](http://www.apple.com) or [www.google.com](http://www.google.com). Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc., Android Auto™ is a trademark of Google Inc.




### Hands-Free Phone

#### Making Calls



##### By Entering Phone Number

1. Enter the phone number using the keypad on the Phone screen.





2. Touch  on the display, or press  on the steering wheel control or  on the control panel.

### Note

If you enter the wrong number, touch  to delete the entered number one digit at a time or touch and hold  to delete all the inputted numbers.


### By Re-dial

From the steering wheel control, press  or touch  on the Phone screen.

### Note

Redialling is not possible when there is no call history.

### From Call History

1. Touch **Call History** on the Phone screen.
2. Touch  All call history
3. Select the contact you want to call.

### With Speed Dial Numbers

Touch and hold speed dial number using the keypad on the Phone screen.



Only speed dial numbers already stored on the mobile phone can be used for speed dial calls. Up to 2-digit speed dial numbers are supported.

For 2-digit speed dial numbers, touch and hold the 2nd digit to make a call to the speed dial number.


### Contacts

1. Touch **Contacts** on the Phone screen.



2. Use  /  to scroll through the list.
3. Select the Phone book entry you want to call.
4. If a contact has two or more phone numbers, touch a number to call.



### Searching for Contact Entries



1. Touch **Contacts** on the Phone screen.
2. Touch  on the Contacts screen.
3. Use the keypad to input the name you want to search.

## 170 Infotainment System - MyLink


4. Select the Phone book entry you want to call.


### Receiving Calls

1. When a phone call comes through the connected Bluetooth mobile phone, the playing track will be cut off and the phone will ring with the relevant information displayed.
2. To talk on the phone, touch  on the steering wheel remote control or touch  on the screen.


To reject the call, touch the  on the steering wheel remote control or touch  on the screen.

### Switching Call to the Phone (Private Mode)

1. If you want to switch the call to a mobile phone instead of the car hands-free, touch .

2. If you want to switch the call back to the hands-free, touch  again. The call is switched to the car hands-free.

### Microphone

You can switch the microphone on/off by touching .

### Voice Mail

The default voice mail number is the phone number of the currently connected phone. The voice mail number can be changed in Bluetooth settings.


To dial a voice mail number:

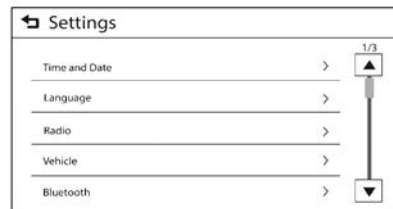
1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Voice Mail.
3. Select Call.

## Settings

### General operation of the settings menu

Various settings for the infotainment system and vehicle can be made via the SETTINGS menu.

1. Press  on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings**.



3. Select the desired setting value.

**Note**

Settings menus and functions may vary depending on your vehicle option.

**Time and Date**

To set the time and date see *Clock* ⇨ 96.

**Sport Mode Customisation**

Adjusts the interactive drive control system settings. See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ 265.

**Auto Mode Customisation**

Adjusts the interactive drive control system settings. See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ 265.

**Language**

1. Touch **Language**.
2. Select language displayed on the Infotainment system.

**Radio**

Adjusts the radio application settings. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 152.

**Vehicle**

Displays the vehicle personalisation settings. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

**Bluetooth**

Displays the Bluetooth settings. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ 164.

**Apple CarPlay and Android Auto**

Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto settings. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ 168.

**USB Auto Launch**

1. Touch **USB Auto Launch**.
2. Select on or off.
  - On : If you connect a device through the USB port, it will be launched automatically.
  - Off : If you connect a device through the USB port, it will not be launched automatically.

**Turn display Off**

1. Touch **Turn Display Off** to turn the display off.
2. Press any button or touch the screen to turn the display On.

**Rear Camera**

1. Touch **Rear Camera**.
  - Guidance Lines : Select the Guidance Lines feature to turn on or off.
  - Rear Park Assist Symbols : Select the Rear Park Assist Symbols feature to turn on or off.

**Return to Factory Settings**

1. Touch **Return to Factory Settings**.
  - Reset Vehicle Settings : Restore all vehicle settings.
  - Clear All Private Data : Clear all private data from the system.
  - Restore Radio Settings : Restore all radio settings.

### Software Information

1. Touch **Software Information**.

- Open Source : Display Open Source Software licensing information.
- System Update : Update the system.

### Introduction

Two infotainment systems are available for this vehicle:

- MyLink (without built-in navigation)
- MyLink with Built-in Navigation. This system also includes a Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB+) radio tuner.

The following pages describe the features and operation of the MyLink with Built-in Navigation system. For vehicles fitted with a MyLink system, see *Introduction* ⇨ 143.

Read the following pages to become familiar with these features.

#### **Warning**

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not

(Continued)

#### **Warning (Continued)**

give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The MyLink with Built-in Navigation infotainment system has features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These functions may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features may also be available through the Driver Information Centre (DIC) and steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation and infotainment display controls.
- Set up the audio by presetting favourite stations and tone.

- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or by using a single voice command using Bluetooth® phone capability.

To play the infotainment system with the ignition off, see *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ 245.

### **Theft-Deterrent Feature**

The Infotainment system has an electronic security system to prevent theft.

Therefore, the infotainment system will only function in the vehicle in which it was first installed and cannot be used in another vehicle.

## Overview

### Control Panel





## 1. Display / Touchscreen.


Home menu. Touchscreen buttons for:

- **AUDIO:** Audio functions.
- **PHONE:** Mobile phone functions.
- **PROJECTION:** Phone projection (Apple CarPlay / Android Auto).
- **NAV:** Satellite navigation functions
- **SETTINGS:** System settings.
- **CLIMATE:** Climate control system functions.
- **DRIVE MODE:** Interactive drive control system settings.
- **TEXT:** Mobile phone text messaging functions.
- **CAMERA:** Surround vision system functions.

### Note

Not all items may be available.

Some items may be on a second home screen page identified by the small circles in the lower centre of the screen. Swipe to one side.

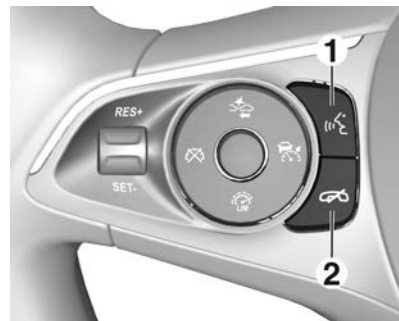
2. **BACK.** Press to return to the previous screen or menu.
3. **Seek ►►:**
  - Press to seek the next radio station or media track.
  - Press and hold to seek up radio stations or fast forward media.
4. **Power  / Volume:**
  - Press and hold to turn the power on/off.
  - Press to turn the mute function on/off.
  - Rotate to adjust the volume.
5. **Seek ◄◄:**
  - Press to seek the previous radio station or media track.

- Press and hold to seek down radio stations or fast rewind media.

## 6. Home

- Press to enter the home menu.
- Press and hold to open the phone projection (Apple CarPlay / Android Auto).

## Steering Wheel Remote Control







### 1. Call


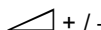
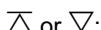

- Press to take a phone call, activate speech recognition or interrupt a voice prompt.
- When there is a connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Press to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

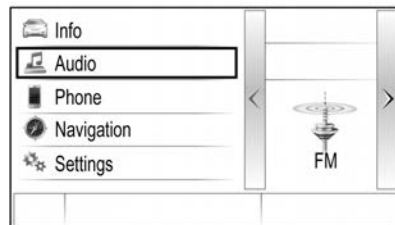
Press and hold to activate the phone's voice pass-thru if supported by the phone.

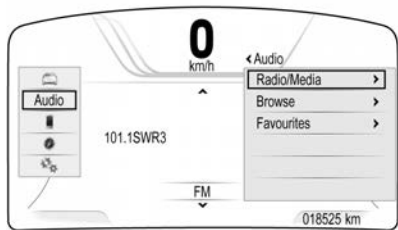
### 2. End : Press to end or decline an incoming call, end speech recognition or activate/deactivate the Mute function.



1. : Press to open the Driver Information Centre (DIC) main menu page (refer images below).
2.  or :
  - Press to scroll through the DIC menu items.
  - Press and hold to fast scroll through long lists in the DIC, e.g. contacts.
3. : Confirm a selection of a DIC item.

4. : If available, press to open a sub-page of the selected item in the DIC.
5.  + / -: Press towards + to increase volume or towards - to decrease volume.
6.  or :
  - Radio: press to select the next/previous favourite station in the DIC.
  - Media: press to select the next/previous track in the DIC.







The above images show examples of the DIC Audio menus depending on vehicle model and theme selected. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 115.

## Operation

### System On/Off


- Press  on the control panel to turn the power on. The last function will be executed.
- Press and hold  on the control panel to turn the power off. The time and temperature will be shown on the screen.

### Turning On/Off Automatically


When the ignition is in accessory or on, the infotainment system is turned on automatically.


When the ignition is off and the driver's door is opened, the infotainment system is turned off automatically.

### Note

If  is pressed and held when the ignition is off, the infotainment system is turned on for approximately 10 minutes.


### Volume Control

Rotate the volume knob  on the control panel to adjust the volume. The current sound volume is indicated.

Alternately, using the steering wheel remote control, press  towards + to increase volume or towards - to decrease volume.

- Turning on the infotainment system will set the volume level to its previous selection (when it is less than the maximum starting volume).
- If the volume level is louder than maximum starting volume level when the infotainment system is turned on, the sound level is adjusted automatically to maximum starting volume level.


### Speed Compensated Volume

Press  and then select Settings. Select Radio, scroll through the list and then select Auto Volume.

To adjust the degree of volume adaptation, select one of the options in the list.


- **Off:** No enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.
- **High:** Maximum enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.

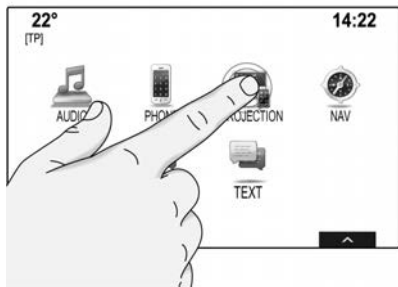
### Mute

Press  on the control panel to turn the mute function on and off.

### Using Home Screen

The home screen is where all applications may be accessed.

1. Press  on the control panel.  
The Home screen is displayed.



2. Touch the desired menu button (icon).
  - AUDIO to select AM/ FM/ USB/ Bluetooth music input.
  - PHONE to activate phone features (if connected).

- PROJECTION to activate Android Auto or Apple Carplay.

If a compatible smartphone is already connected to the USB port, the Projection icon will be replaced with Android Auto or Apple Carplay icons.


- NAV to activate the satellite navigation.
- SETTINGS to enter the system setup menu.
- CLIMATE to display the climate control system functions. See *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ 233
- DRIVE MODE to display the interactive drive control system settings. See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ 265.
- TEXT to activate phone text messaging features (if connected).

- CAMERA to display the surround vision system functions. See *Surround Vision System* ⇨ 272.

### Note

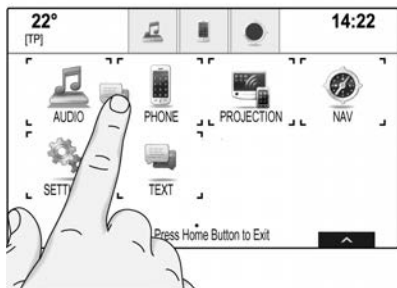
Not all items may be available.

Some items may be on a second home screen page identified by the small circles in the lower centre of the screen. Swipe to one side.

To return to the next higher menu level, select . To leave the menu currently active, select **Exit**.

### Moving Items

Home screen icons can be moved.




Touch and hold the icon you wish to move until frame marks appear around the icons.

Move your finger to the desired location and release the icon.

#### Note

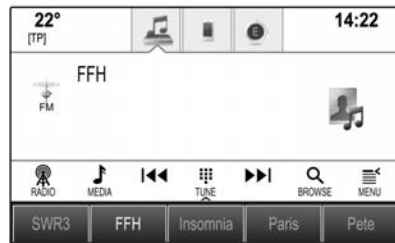
Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at a constant speed.

All other items are rearranged.

Press  on the control panel to exit edit mode.

## Menu Operation

### Application Tray



The application tray is located in the top centre of the display and is accessible from all main menus.

Three to five application icons may be stored in the application tray.


Some application icons dynamically adapt to the current situation, e.g. indicating that you missed a phone call.

The application tray can be personalised by moving items into and out of the application tray area.

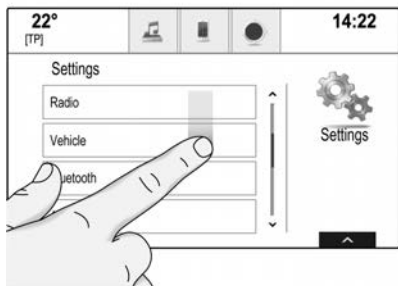
## Interaction Selector Bar

The interaction selector bar is located at the bottom of the screen and is accessible from all main menus.



By using the interaction selector bar, you can change the different views within one application or perform application-specific actions such as starting a speech recognition session. To display the interaction selector bar when it is not shown on the display, select  at the bottom of the screen.

### Scrolling Lists



When navigating menus, if more items are available than displayed on the screen, the list can be scrolled.

To scroll through a list of menu items, you may optionally:

- Place your finger anywhere on the screen and move it upwards or downwards.

#### Note

Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at a constant speed.

- Touch  $\nabla$  or  $\blacktriangle$  at the top or bottom of the scroll bar.
- Move the scroll bar slider up and down with your finger.
- In alphabetically ordered lists, touch the letter you want in the vertical keyboard. The list jumps to the corresponding location within the list.

To return to the top of the list, touch the list title.

#### Note

In subsequent chapters, the operating steps for scrolling to a list item via the touchscreen will be described as "...scroll to <item name>".

### Messages

In the case of a system event, before the execution of a system function, or due to an outside trigger, e.g. incoming phone call, you may be prompted with a message.

Select one of the available options.

If ignored, most of the messages are dismissed automatically after a certain period of time. Alerts that are not dismissed automatically remain on the screen until they are acknowledged or the trigger becomes invalid.

### Keyboards



#### Letter Keyboard

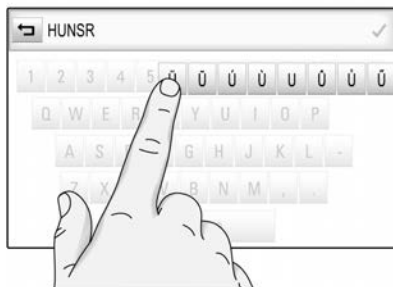


### Symbol keyboard

Depending on the application or function currently active, the keyboard menu is displayed differently. To switch to the symbol keyboard, select **SYM**. To switch to the letter keyboard, select **ABC**.

### Entering Characters

To enter a character, touch its screen button. The character is entered upon release.



Touch and hold a letter screen button to display associated letters in a letter pop-up menu. Release and then select the desired letter.

To confirm your input, select the confirmation screen button.

### Auto-complete Function

If a character sequence has been entered once, it is stored within the system and may be recalled by the auto-complete function.

As soon as one character (letter or digit) is entered, the auto-complete function becomes active. Every additional character entered is

considered in the matching process, reducing the list of auto-complete matches.

Select **✓** next to the characters entered to display a list of all auto-complete matches.

### Note

Above the **✓** screen button, the number of available options is displayed. It changes according to the number of matches found. Select a list item. The keyboard is re-displayed with the list item shown in the entry field.

### Editing Text

To place the cursor, touch a position within the text. Enter your changes.

Depending on the application, select **X** to delete one entered character. Touch and hold **X** to delete all characters.

Select the confirmation screen button to confirm an input.

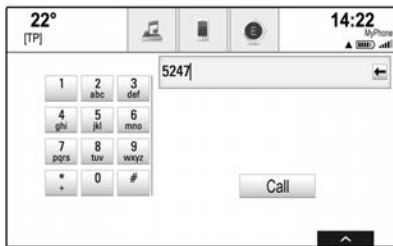
## 182 Infotainment System - MyLink with Built-in Navigation

### Mixed Case Characters

In most cases, only capital letters may be entered. If mixed case character recognition is available, an additional **Shift** screen button is displayed. To activate the shift function and capitalise one letter, select **Shift**. The function is automatically deactivated after one letter has been entered.

### Keypad

If only a number or PIN code are to be entered, a keypad is displayed. Depending on the application or function currently active, the keypad menu is displayed differently.



For a detailed description of how to enter characters and change entered text, see above.

### Favourites

A range of different information may be stored as favourites, e.g.:

- Radio stations.
- Music tracks.
- Albums or artists.
- Telephone numbers.
- Destinations and routes.
- POIs.
- Contact entries.

- Tone settings.
- Home screen applications.



60 individual favourite locations are available, displayed as five favourites per row.

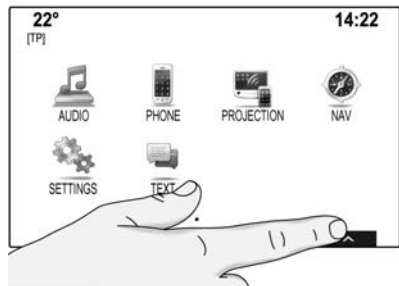
They can be displayed in a one-row view or in a three-row view.

If a favourite location is occupied, the Favourites screen button displays the label text of the favourite. If a favourite location is empty, the position number of the favourite location (1 to 60) is indicated.



## Displaying Favourites

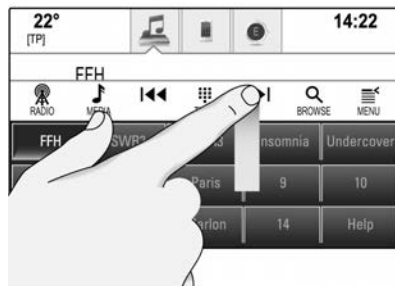
The favourites list is accessible from all menus. To display one row of favourites when no interaction selector bar is shown at the bottom of the screen: Select  $\wedge$  .



To display one row of favourites when an interaction selector bar is shown on the screen, place your finger on the interaction selector bar and move it upwards until one row of favourites becomes visible.

## Note

Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at constant speed.



To display three rows of favourites, drag the favourites list up further.

## Scrolling Through Favourites Pages

The favourites page is visible in the one row or the three row view.

To scroll through the favourites pages, place your finger anywhere on the favourites page and move it left or right. The next or previous page of favourites is displayed.

## Note

Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at constant speed.

When reaching the beginning or the end of the favourites pages, the entire list wraps to the beginning.

At the bottom of the screen, indication marks designate how many favourites pages may be accessed and which page is currently displayed. The number of indication marks adapts to the view chosen (more pages in one-row view, less pages in three-row view).

## Storing Favourites


Favourites may be stored from the home screen, the audio application, the navigation application or the phone application.

Display the favourites list and scroll to the Favourites page. Touch and hold the favourite's screen button.

If there is only one storable item on the screen, a beep sounds and the item is stored to the screen button.

If there is more than one storable item on the screen, the favourites page is minimised and the previously shown menu is re-displayed.


Select the item you wish to store as a favourite. A beep sounds and the item is stored to the screen button. A few examples for storing favourites are given below.

**Example: Radio station** Press  and select **AUDIO** on the home screen. To activate the desired waveband, repeatedly select **RADIO** in the interaction selector bar.

Seek for the station you wish to store as a favourite.


To store this station as a favourite, display the Favourites list and scroll to the Favourites page.

Touch and hold the favourite's screen button until a beep sounds. The station is stored as a favourite.

**Example: Album** Press  and select **AUDIO** on the home screen. Repeatedly select **MEDIA** in the interaction selector bar until the desired audio source is active.


Select **BROWSE** to activate the browse menu and then select **ALBUMS**. To store one of the albums as a favourite, reveal the Favourites list and scroll to the Favourites page.

Touch and hold the favourite's screen button. The favourites page is minimised and the list of albums is re-displayed. Select the album you wish to store as a favourite. The selected album is stored as a favourite.

**Example: Destination** Press  and select **NAV** on the home screen. Select **DESTINATION**, select **RECENT** in the interaction selector bar and then touch the desired destination from the list. To store the address as a favourite, display the favourites list and scroll to the favourites page.

Touch and hold the favourite's screen button. The selected address is stored as a favourite.

### **Example: Telephone number**

Press  and select **PHONE** on the home screen. Select **KEYPAD** and enter the number you wish to call. To store this number as a favourite, display the favourites list and scroll to the favourites page.

Touch and hold the favourite's screen button. The number is stored as a favourite.

### **Retrieving Favourites**

Display a favourites page (see above) and scroll to the desired favourites page (if necessary).

### **Note**

Unavailable favourites are greyed out.

Select the favourite's screen button. Depending on the kind of favourite selected, a radio station or track is played, a phone call is initiated, a route is calculated or an application is started.

The active favourite is highlighted.

### Editing Favourites

Select **SETTINGS** on the home screen, and then **Radio** then **Manage Favourites**.



A three-row view of the favourites list is displayed with the editing options shown in the interaction selector bar.

**Renaming Favourites:** Scroll to the Favourites page and select the favourite you wish to edit. Select **RENAME**. A keyboard opens up

with the current favourite label text displayed in the entry field as well as in the label preview area.

Enter the new label text and select **Save**. You are returned to the favourites page.

Select **^** at the bottom of the screen to reveal the interaction selector bar and then select **DONE** to return to the settings menu.

**Deleting Favourites:** Scroll to the Favourites page and select the favourite you wish to delete. Select **DELETE**. The favourite and all associated data are deleted.

Select **DONE** to return to the settings menu.

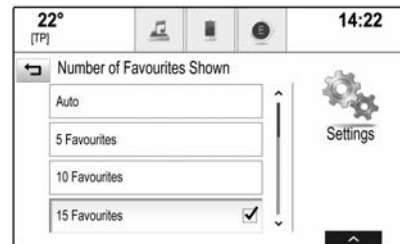
**Moving Favourites:** Scroll to the Favourites page. Drag the favourite you wish to move to its new position.

To store a favourite in a location beyond the favourites page currently visible, drag it to the **<** or **>** symbols on top of the favourites page. The list starts scrolling.

To stop scrolling, navigate back to the favourites page area. Select **DONE** to confirm the action and return to the settings menu.

### Defining the Number of Favourites Shown

Press **^** and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen. Select **Radio** and then **Number of Favourites Shown**.



Activate the desired number of favourites to be displayed.

### Note

If the number of favourites stored exceeds the number of favourites activated in the settings menu, the additionally stored favourites are not deleted but just hidden from the view. They may be reactivated by increasing the number of viewable favourites.

### Contacts

Two different types of contacts lists may be accessed from the infotainment system:


- Contacts lists downloaded from Bluetooth devices or other external sources.
- Vehicle contacts list.


### Note

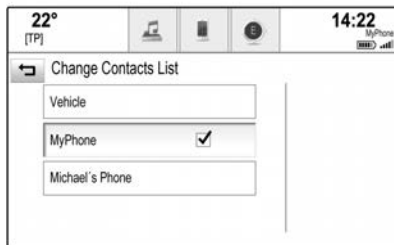
A maximum of 1000 contacts may be stored in the vehicle contacts list. There is no limit for downloaded contacts lists.

The contacts list displayed upon first access differs depending on the application active and the devices connected.

### Changing the Source

To display a contacts list, press , activate the phone application and then select **CONTACTS** in the interaction selector bar.

Select **Change Contacts List** on the right side of the screen. A list of all contact sources available is displayed. The currently active contacts list is marked with .




Select the desired contacts list. The list is displayed.

### Note

The system remembers a list chosen within an application. When re-entering the contacts list from this application, the list previously selected is re-displayed.

### Using the Contacts List

To display a contacts list, press , activate the phone application and then select **CONTACTS** in the interaction selector bar.



To display the contact details view, select one of the entries from the list. The contact details view may comprise:

- First name and last name.
- Several phone numbers.
- Several email addresses.
- Several addresses (e.g. home and work).
- In the vehicle contacts list: category entry.
- In the vehicle contacts list: notes field.
- For POI entries: information on business hours, menu (e.g. restaurant), prices etc.

**Note**

The data is ordered depending on the application active, e.g. in the phone application, the phone numbers are displayed first.

Select the desired entry.

**Adding New Contacts**

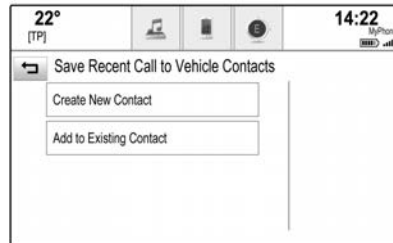
To add information from the application menus to the vehicle contacts list, open the application.

**Navigation Application:**

Select or enter a destination. The destination details view is displayed. Select **Save**. A menu is displayed.

**Phone Application:**

Select **RECENT**. Select **+** beside the phone number you wish to add to the contacts list. A menu is displayed.



Select one of the options.

- **Create New Contact:** A data category selection menu is displayed. Select the data category for the information you

wish to store, such as work address or mobile phone. The contact details view is displayed.

**Note**

The data categories presented in the new menu correspond to the information you wish to store, e.g. if the information to be stored is an address, only address types are presented in the list.

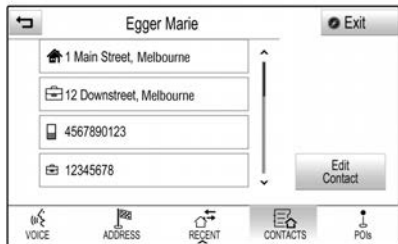
Complete the entry and select **Save** to save the contact.

- **Add to Existing Contact:** The vehicle contacts list is displayed. Select the desired contact. The contact details view is displayed with the information to be added shown separately on the right side of the screen. Select the data category for the information you wish to store, such as work address or mobile phone.

If you choose an existing data category, the existing information is overwritten. Select **Save** to save the new information.

### Editing Contacts

To edit a contact, open the vehicle contacts list. Select the desired contact entry in the vehicle contacts list. Select **Edit Contact** on the right side of the screen.



The editing view is displayed.

### Modifying Information:

Select the field you wish to modify. Depending on the field selected, the keyboard or keypad is displayed. Enter your changes. Select **Save** in the contact details view to save your changes.

### Adding New Information:

Select the field where you wish to enter additional information. If you wish to create a new field for a data category already existing, such as a second mobile phone number, select **+** in the data field.

### Note

The **+** screen button is only displayed if it is possible to add more information for that data category.

Depending on the field selected, the keyboard or keypad is displayed. Enter the new data and select the screen button in front of the entry field.

Select **Save** in the contact details view to save your changes.

### Deleting Contacts

#### Deleting a Single Contact:

To delete a single contact, open the vehicle contacts list. Select the desired contact entry in the vehicle contacts list. Select **Edit Contact** on the right side of the screen.

To delete the contact entry and all associated information, select **Delete**. A confirmation message is displayed. Confirm the message. The entry is deleted.

#### Delete the Entire Vehicle Contacts List:

To delete the entire vehicle contacts list, open the vehicle contacts list. Select **Change Contacts List** on the right side of the screen. A list of all available contacts sources is displayed. The currently active contacts list is marked with **✓**.

Select the **-** screen button next to **Vehicle**.

A confirmation message is displayed. Confirm the message to delete the list.

#### Sorting the Contacts Lists:

By default, the lists are ordered alphabetically by first name. If there is no first name available, the last name is taken instead. If there is no first or last name, one of the first characters entered is used as sorting criteria.

The sorting order may be changed if first name and last name are stored in two different fields.

To change the sorting order, select **Sort**. Choose the desired sorting order. The list is resorted accordingly.

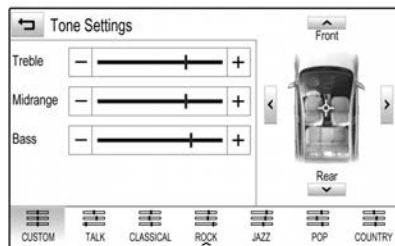
### Tone Settings

In the tone settings menu, the tone characteristics can be set. The menu may be accessed from each audio main menu.

#### Note

A customised set of tone settings may be stored as a favourite.

To open the tone settings menu, select **MENU** in the audio main menu. Select **Tone Settings**.



#### Treble

Use this setting to enhance or attenuate the high frequencies of the audio sources. Adjust the setting by repeatedly touching – or +.

Alternatively, move the slider on the settings bar.

#### Midrange

Use this setting to enhance or attenuate the midrange frequencies of the audio source. Adjust the settings by repeatedly touching – or +.

Alternatively, move the slider on the settings bar.

#### Bass

Use this setting to enhance or attenuate the deep frequencies of the audio sources. Adjust the settings by repeatedly touching – or +.

Alternatively, move the slider on the settings bar.

#### Balance and Fader

In the illustration at the right side of the menu, define the point within the passenger compartment which is to have the best sound.

To adjust the settings, touch ∨ , ∧ , < or >.


To quickly change between the front and rear speakers, select **Front** or **Rear** at the top and bottom of the vehicle diagram.

#### Equaliser Modes

Select one of the screen buttons in the interaction selector bar to optimise the tone for the specific styles of music. Select **CUSTOM** if you wish to define the tone settings yourself.


## Volume Settings

### Maximum Startup Volume

Press  and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen.

Scroll through the list and select **Radio** and then **Maximum Start-Up Volume**. Touch **-** or **+** to set the desired volume.

### Automatic Volume Adjustment

Press  and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen.

Scroll through the list and select **Radio** and then **Auto Volume**.

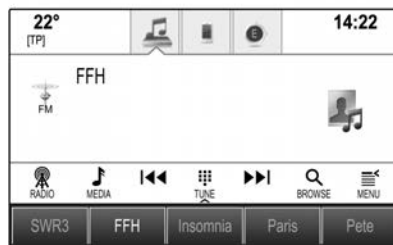
To adjust the degree of volume adaptation, set Auto Volume to one of the available options.


- **Off:** no enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.
- **High:** maximum enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.

## Radio

### AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)

The radio function is part of the AUDIO application.





Press  and select **AUDIO** on the home screen.

Select **RADIO** in the interaction selector bar.



Repeatedly select **RADIO** to toggle between the different wavebands, e.g. AM, FM or DAB.

## Station Search

### Automatic Station Search

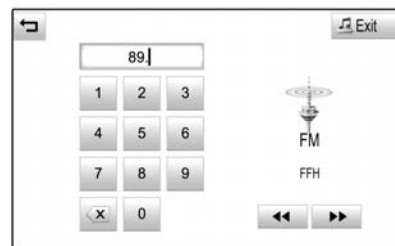
Touch  /  to play the previous or next station.

### Manual Station Search

Touch and hold  / . Release the button when the desired frequency has almost been reached.

### Station Tuning

Select **TUNE** in the interaction selector bar. A keypad is displayed.



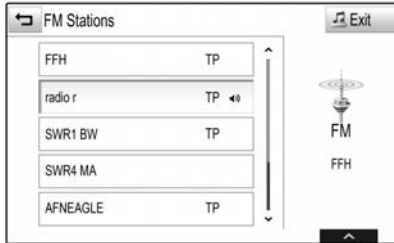


Touch the **Direct Tune** field and then enter the desired frequency. Confirm your input.

**Station Lists**

In the station lists, all receivable radio stations within the current reception area are available for selection.

To display the station list of the waveband currently active, select **BROWSE** in the interaction selector bar. The station list is displayed.



The currently received station is highlighted. Scroll through the list and select the desired item.

**Updating the Station List**

If the stations are stored in a waveband station list can no longer be received, select **Update Station List**.

**Note**

If a waveband station list is updated, the corresponding category list is also updated.

Updating Station List is displayed on the screen until the search has been completed.

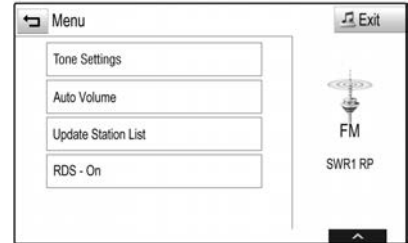
**Radio Data System**

Radio data system (RDS) is a service of FM stations that makes it considerably easier to find the desired station with error-free reception. Advantages of RDS:

- On the display, the program name of the station appears instead of its frequency.
- Depending on the station received, the infotainment system displays radio text that may contain information on the current program.

**RDS Settings**

To configure the RDS settings options, activate the radio function and then select the FM waveband. Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar to display the FM menu.



Set **RDS - On** or **RDS - Off**.

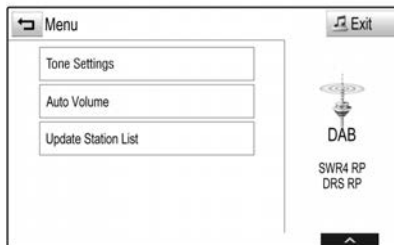
### Digital Audio Broadcasting

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) broadcasts radio stations digitally. Advantages of DAB include:

- DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency.
- With DAB, several radio programs (services) can be broadcast on a single ensemble.
- As long as a given DAB receiver can pick up the signal sent out by a broadcasting station (even if the signal is very weak), sound reproduction is ensured.
- Interference caused by stations that are on nearby frequencies (a phenomenon that is typical of AM and FM reception) does not occur with DAB.
- If the DAB signal is reflected by natural obstacles or buildings, the reception quality of DAB is improved, whereas AM or FM reception is considerably impaired in such cases.

### DAB Settings

To configure the DAB settings options, activate the radio function and then select the DAB waveband. Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar to display the DAB menu.



### Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power/USB outlet.

If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power/USB outlet.

### FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km.

Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

### AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night.

The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception.

When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

## DAB

DAB is more robust to noise (unwanted interference) particularly in built-up areas (tall buildings).

The range for most DAB stations is less than for FM. Refer to the station providers for coverage areas.

## Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage can cause interference with the vehicle's radio.

## Audio Players

### USB

#### USB Port



A USB port for the connection of external devices is located in the centre console.

USB ports for charging only are provided in the back of the centre console. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ 97.

#### Note

Not all devices are supported by the infotainment system.

## Connecting/Disconnecting a Device

Devices such as an MP3 player, USB drive or smartphone can be connected to the USB port.

The infotainment system can play audio files, display picture files or play movie files contained in the USB storage device. When connected to the USB port, various functions of the devices mentioned above can be operated via the controls and menus.

When connecting a device use a genuine connection cable.

If a non-readable USB device is connected, a corresponding error message is displayed and the infotainment system automatically switches to the previous function.

To disconnect the USB device, select another function and then remove the USB storage device.


### Caution

Avoid disconnecting the device during playback. This may damage the device or the infotainment system.

### USB Auto Launch

By default, the USB audio menu is displayed automatically as soon as a USB device is connected containing music files.

If desired, this function can be deactivated.

Press  and then select **SETTINGS** to open the settings menu. Select **Radio**, scroll to **USB Auto Launch** and touch the screen button next to the function. To reactivate the function, touch the screen button again.

### File Formats

Only devices formatted in the FAT32, NTFS and HFS+ file systems are supported.

### Note

Some files may not be played properly. This might be due to a different recording format or the condition of the file.

Files from online shops to which Digital Rights Management (DRM) has been applied cannot be played.

The infotainment system can play the following audio and movie files stored on external devices.

### Audio Files

The playable audio file formats are MP3, WMA, AAC, M4A and AIF.

When playing a file with ID3 tag information, the infotainment system can display information such as track title and artist.


### Movie Files

The playable movie file formats are AVI, MPG, MP4, XVID and WMV.

Common audio and video combinations for mobile devices are generally supported.

### Playing USB Music Files

Connect the USB device containing the music files to the USB port.



Press  and select **AUDIO** on the home screen.

Repeatedly select **MEDIA** in the interaction selector bar to activate the desired media source.



Example of the USB main menu.

### Pausing Playback

Select  to pause playback. Select  to resume playback.

**Skipping to Previous or Next Track**

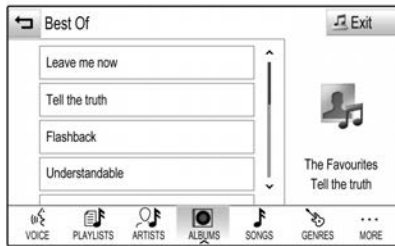
Select ◀◀ or ▶▶ to play the previous or next track or file.

**Fast Forwarding or Rewinding**

Touch and hold ◀◀ or ▶▶ to rewind or fast forward. Alternatively, move the slider on the time bar (only available for USB).

**Browse Function**

To display the browse screen, select **BROWSE** in the interaction selector bar.



Select **PLAYLISTS, ARTISTS, ALBUMS, SONGS, GENRES** or **MORE**.

The MORE menu comprises the additional categories: Folder View, Podcasts, Audiobooks, Videos and Composers.

Browse through the categories until you find the desired track. Select the track to start playback.

**Playback Order**

If Shuffle is activated, the tracks on the active device are played in random order.

**Note**

In USB playback, the shuffle function is dependent on the filter mode selected for song playback, e.g. album, artist, genre.


To display the audio menu, select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar.

Set **Shuffle - On** or **Shuffle - Off**.

**Playing USB Movies**

**Starting Video Playback**

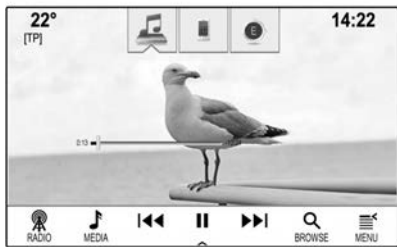
Connect the device as previously described.

Press  and select **AUDIO** on the home screen. Repeatedly select **MEDIA** in the interaction selector bar to activate the desired media source. Select **BROWSE** and then **MORE**.

Select **Videos** and then the desired movie file. Video playback is started.

**Note**

Videos may only be played if the parking brake is applied.



## Video Menu

To display the video menu, select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar.

## Bluetooth Audio

Music may be played from a paired and connected Bluetooth device. For help pairing the device see *Bluetooth* ⇨ 219.

## Before Playing Bluetooth Music

- Bluetooth music can be played through the infotainment system only when a Bluetooth device has been connected. To play Bluetooth music, connect the Bluetooth device to the infotainment system.
- Supported profiles: A2DP, AVRCP
- Bluetooth music may not be supported depending on the mobile phone or Bluetooth device.

- A musical note icon (🎵) will appear on the screen if the Bluetooth device is successfully connected.
- If the Bluetooth is disconnected while playing music, the music is discontinued.
- For Bluetooth music to play, the music must at least be played once from the music player mode of the device.

## Pausing Playback

Select **II** to pause playback. Select **▶** to resume playback.

## Skipping to Previous or Next File

Select **◀◀** or **▶▶** to play the previous or next movie file.

## Fast Forwarding or Rewinding

Touch and hold **◀◀** or **▶▶** to rewind or fast forward. Alternatively, move the slider on the time bar (only available for USB).

## Playing Bluetooth Music

Press **📶** and select **AUDIO** on the home screen.

Repeatedly select **MEDIA** in the interaction selector bar to activate the desired media source.

## Pausing Playback

Select **II** to pause playback. Select **▶** to resume playback.

## Skipping to Previous or Next Track

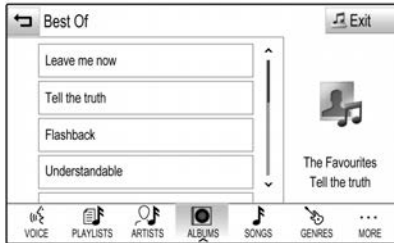
Select **◀◀** or **▶▶** to play the previous or next track or file.

**Fast Forwarding or Rewinding**

Touch and hold **⏮** or **⏭** to rewind or fast forward. Alternatively, move the slider on the time bar (only available for USB).

**Browse Function**

To display the browse screen, select **BROWSE** in the interaction selector bar.



Select **PLAYLISTS, ARTISTS, ALBUMS, SONGS, GENRES** or **MORE**.

The MORE menu comprises the additional categories: Folder View, Podcasts, Audiobooks, Videos and Composers.

Browse through the categories until you find the desired track. Select the track to start playback.

**Playback Order**

If Shuffle is activated, the tracks on the active device are played in random order.

**Note**

In USB playback, the shuffle function is dependent on the filter mode selected for song playback, e.g. album, artist, genre.

To display the audio menu, select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar.

Set **Shuffle - On** or **Shuffle - Off**.

**Caution Playing Bluetooth Music**

- Do not change the track too quickly when playing Bluetooth music.

- It takes some time to transmit data from the mobile phone to the infotainment system. The infotainment system outputs the audio from the Bluetooth device as it is transmitted.
- If the Bluetooth device is not in the idle screen mode, it may not automatically play even though it is in Bluetooth music play mode.
- The infotainment system transmits the order to play from the mobile phone in the Bluetooth music play mode. If this is done in a different mode, then the device transmits the order to stop. Depending on the mobile phone's options, this order to play/stop may some take time to activate.
- If Bluetooth music playback is not functioning, check to see if the mobile phone is in the idle screen mode.
- Sometimes, sounds may be cut off during the Bluetooth music playback.

## Navigation

### Navigation System Overview

The navigation system will reliably guide you to your destination.

The navigation system cannot, however, take into account traffic incidents, traffic regulations changed at short notice and hazards or problems that arise suddenly (e.g. road works).

#### **Danger**

Giving extended attention to navigation tasks while driving will greatly increase the risk of a collision that may cause personal injury or death.

Road safety has absolute priority!

Only operate this system if the road and traffic conditions allow you to do so.

(Continued)

#### **Danger (Continued)**

The driver's full attention is always required while driving.

Use voice guidance directions whenever possible.

#### **Function**

The position and movement of the vehicle are detected by the navigation system using sensors. The travelled distance is determined by the vehicle's speedometer signal and turning movements on bends by a gyro sensor. The position is determined by the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellites.

By comparing the sensor signals with the digital maps, it is possible to determine the position with an accuracy of approx. 10 metres.


The system will also work with poor GPS reception. However, the accuracy of the positioning will be reduced.

After entering the destination address or point of interest (nearest petrol station, hotel, etc.), the route is calculated from the current location to the destination selected. Route guidance is provided by voice output and an arrow, as well as with the aid of a multi-colour map display.

#### **Map Data**

All required map data is stored within the infotainment system. To update your map software via the USB port, contact your dealer.

### Using the Navigation System

To display the navigation map, press  and select **NAV** on the home screen.

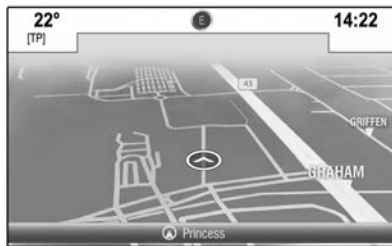


### Route Guidance Not Active



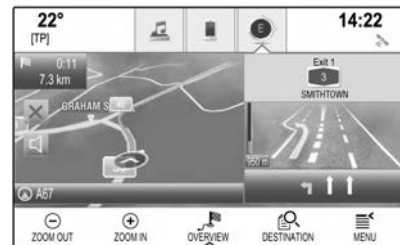
The current location is indicated by a circle with an arrow pointing to the direction of travel.

After a time-out of approx. 15 seconds, the application tray and the interaction selector bar disappear to show a full screen view of the map.



To re-display the application tray and the interaction selector bar, touch the screen.

### Route Guidance Active



- The map view is displayed.
- The active route is indicated by a coloured line.
- The moving vehicle is marked by a circle.
- The next turning manoeuvre is indicated by an arrow symbol on the right side of the screen.
- Lane guidance is provided on the right side of the screen.
- The arrival time is shown above the arrow symbol.

## 200 Infotainment System - MyLink with Built-in Navigation

- The distance to the next turning manoeuvre is shown below the arrow symbol.

### Map Manipulation

#### Scrolling

To scroll the map, place your finger anywhere on the screen and move it up, down, left or right depending on the direction in which you want to scroll.

The map moves accordingly, displaying a new area.

To return to the current location, select **RESET** in the interaction selector bar.

#### Centring

Touch the desired location on the screen. The map centres around this location.



A red symbol is displayed at the location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.



To return to the current location, select **RESET** in the interaction selector bar.

#### Zooming

To zoom in on a selected map location, select **ZOOM IN**. To zoom out and display a larger area around the selected location, select **ZOOM OUT**.

### Overview Button

During active route guidance, an **OVERVIEW** screen button is displayed in the interaction selector bar.

To display an overview of the route currently active on the map, select **OVERVIEW**. The screen button changes to **RESET**. To return to the normal view, select **RESET**.


### Map Display

#### View Mode

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Map View** to display the submenu.

Select the desired map view (**3D View**, **Heading Up View**, **North Up View**).

#### Note

Alternately, you may repeatedly select  in the application tray to quickly toggle between the different map views (The letter within the circle changes based on the direction the vehicle is facing, e.g. S = South).

### Audio Information

If Audio Information - On is set, information on the station, album or song currently playing is displayed on the map screen.

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Map View** to display the submenu.

Set **Audio Information - On** or **Audio Information - Off**.

### Display Mode

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Map View** to display the submenu.

Select **Day / Night Mode**.

Depending on the external lighting conditions, activate Day or Night. If you wish the screen to adjust automatically, activate Auto.

### Display of Buildings

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Map View** to display the submenu.

Buildings can be displayed in 3D or normal view. Set **3D Buildings - On** or **3D Buildings - Off**.

### Autozoom Function

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Map View** to display the submenu.

The system may zoom in on the map for special manoeuvres. Set **Autozoom - On** or **Autozoom - Off**.

### POI Icons

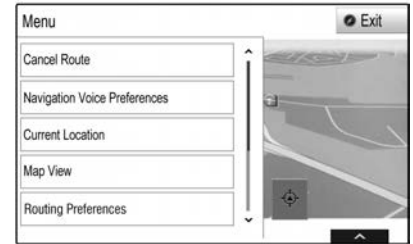
Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Display "Points of Interest" Icons** to display the submenu.

If POI Icons is activated, points of interest around the current location or along the route are displayed on the map. Set **POI Icons - On** or **POI Icons - Off**.

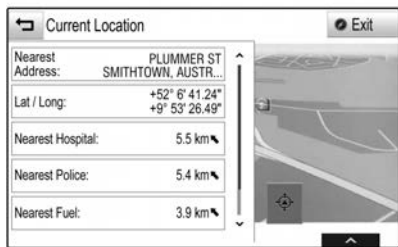
If POI Icons is set to On, activate the POI categories you wish to be displayed. Select **Clear All** to deselect all categories.

### Information on the Current Location

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar to display the Navigation menu.



Select **Current Location** to display the submenu indicating details on the nearest address, the coordinates and Points of Interest around the current location.



### Nearest Address

From this submenu, you may store the nearest address to the system. Select **Nearest Address**: to display the destination details view.

For a detailed description on how to save an address as or to a contact, or as a favourite see *Operation* ⇨ 177.

### Points of Interest

From this submenu, you may start route guidance to one of the nearest points of interest.

Select the desired point of interest. The destination details view is displayed. Select **Go**.

For a detailed description on how to enter a destination see *Enter Destination* ⇨ 205.

### Navigation Data Management

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Personal Data**. A list of different data storage locations of the navigation application is displayed.

### Contacts List

Select **Contacts** to display the submenu. To delete all entries in the contacts list, select **Delete All Entries**. Confirm the message displayed to delete the entire contacts list.

To display the contacts edit mode, select **Edit** Contacts List. For a detailed description on editing the contacts list see *Operation* ⇨ 177.

### Recent Destinations List

Select **Recent Destinations** to display the submenu.

To delete all entries in the recent destinations list, select **Delete All Destinations**. Confirm the message displayed to delete the entire recent destinations list.

To delete individual destinations, select **Delete Individual Destinations**. The recent destinations list is displayed. Select – next to the destination. Confirm the message displayed to delete the destination.

### Downloaded POIs

Select **My POIs** to display the submenu.

POIs which were previously downloaded to the system may be deleted. The other POIs remain within the system.

To delete all entries in the contacts list, select **Delete All My POIs**. Confirm the message displayed to delete the entire POIs list.

To delete only individual categories, select **Delete Individual Categories** to display a list of POI

categories. Select – next to the category. Confirm the message displayed to delete the category.

### Uploading Destination Data to a USB Device

For later use, e.g. in other vehicles, you can store the vehicle contacts list and POIs previously downloaded (see "Creating and Downloading User Defined POIs" below) on a USB device.

#### Select **Upload Saved Locations**.

The contacts list and POI data is stored on the connected USB device in the folders 'F:\myContacts' or 'F:\myPOIs', where 'F:' is the root folder of the USB device.

#### **Note**

This function may only be carried out if a USB device with sufficient storage space is connected.

#### **Autocomplete Function**

To delete the list of destination entries used by the autocomplete function, select **Delete Autocomplete**.

### Downloading Contacts Data

You can share your vehicle contacts list data with infotainment systems in other vehicles.

To upload the data to a USB device, see "Uploading Destination Data to a USB Device" above.

Connect the USB device to the infotainment system. A message is displayed that prompts you to confirm the download. After confirmation, the contacts data is downloaded to the infotainment system.

The downloaded contacts are then selectable via the CONTACTS menu. See *Operation* ⇨ 177.

### Creating and Downloading User Defined POIs (My POIs)

In addition to the predefined POIs already stored in the infotainment system, you can create user defined POIs that meet your personal requirements.

After creation, such downloaded user defined POIs can be downloaded to the Infotainment system.

For each POI, you need to define the GPS coordinates (longitude and latitude values) of the location and a descriptive name.

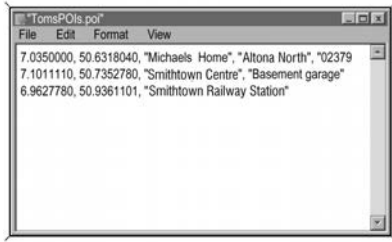
After downloading the POI data to the infotainment system, you will find the POIs as selectable destinations in the My POIs menu, see "POIs Entry" in *Enter Destination* ⇨ 205.

### Creating a Text File with POI Data

Create a text file (e.g. by using a simple text editor software) with an arbitrary name and the file extension .poi, e.g. 'TomsPOIs.poi'.

#### **Note**

Character encoding UTF-8 (Unicode) must be selected when storing the text file. Otherwise the POI data may not be imported correctly to the system.



Enter the POI data into the text file in the following format:

Longitude coordinate, Latitude coordinate, "Name of POI", "Additional information", "Phone number"

Example: 7.0350000, 50.6318040, "Michaels Home", "Altona North", "02379234567", see illustration above.

The GPS coordinates must be expressed in decimal degrees and can be taken, e.g., from a topographical map. The additional information and phone number strings are optional.

If no additional information is required for example, " must be entered at the position. Example: 7.0350000, 50.6318040, "Michaels Home", ", "02379234567".

The POI name and the additional information string may not exceed 60 characters each. The phone number string may not exceed 30 characters.

The POI data of each destination address must be entered in a single separate line, see the illustration above.

### Storing the POI Data on a USB Drive

In the root directory of a USB drive, create a folder named 'myPOIs', e.g. 'F:\myPOIs', where 'F:\' is the root directory of the USB drive.

In the 'myPOIs' folder, store the text file with your POIs, e.g. 'F:\myPOIs\TomsPOIs.poi'.

### Organising the POI Data in Several Sub-folders

Optionally, you can organise the text files in several randomly named sub-folders (max. depth of sub-folder structure: 2).

Examples: 'F:\myPOIs\AnnsPOIs' or 'F:\myPOIs\MyJourney\Outback', where 'F:\' is the root directory of the USB drive.

### Note

In a folder, only sub-folders or only POI files may be stored. A mixture of both will not be imported correctly to the system.

After downloading individual POI data organised in that way to the infotainment system (see download description further below), the My POIs menu will show a list of selectable submenus.

After selecting a submenu, further submenus or the related list of imported POI categories will be displayed.


## Downloading the POI Data to the Infotainment System

Connect the USB device with your user defined POI data to the USB port. A message is displayed that prompts you to confirm the download. After confirmation, the POI data will be downloaded to the infotainment system.

The downloaded POIs are then selectable as destinations via the My POIs menu, see "POIs Entry" in *Enter Destination* ⇨ 205.

## Enter Destination

The navigation application provides different options to set a destination for route guidance.

Press  and select **NAV** on the home screen to display the navigation map.

Select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar and then select one of the different address entry options.



### One-shot Destination Entry

Touch the entry field in the top line of the menu. A keyboard is displayed.

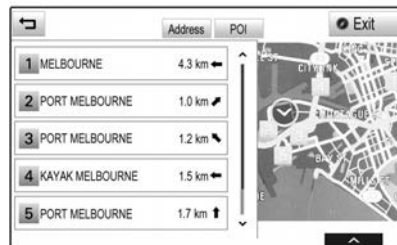
For a detailed description on using keyboards see *Operation* ⇨ 177.

Enter an address or search a term and confirm your input. Two lists with possible destinations are created. To switch between the list tabs, touch **Address** or **POI** in the top line of the screen.

Address list:



POI list:



## 206 Infotainment System - MyLink with Built-in Navigation

For a detailed description on POIs, see "POIs Entry" below.

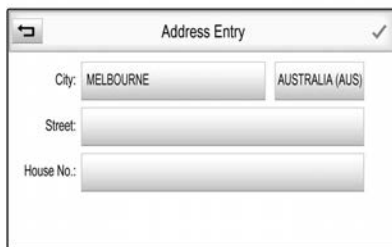
Select one of the destinations. The destination details view is displayed.



To start route guidance, select **Go**.

### Address Entry Screen

Select **ADDRESS**. The Address Entry screen is displayed.



Touch one of the entry fields next to the address part entries. A keyboard is displayed.

For a detailed description on the keyboards see *Operation* ⇨ 177.

Enter the required destination information.

#### Note

The screen does not need to be filled out completely.

To confirm your input, select ✓ in the top right corner of the screen.

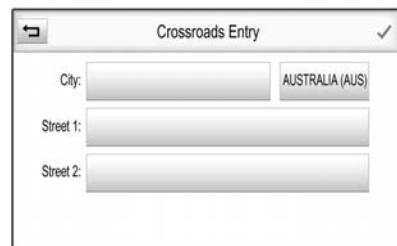
If there is more than one destination possible according to the information entered, a list of all

matching destinations found is displayed. Select the desired address.

The destination details view is displayed. To start route guidance, select **Go**.

### Crossroad Entry Screen

Select **CROSSROADS**. The Crossroads Entry screen is displayed.



Touch one of the entry fields next to the address part entries. A keyboard is displayed.



For a detailed description on the keyboards see *Operation* ⇨ 177.

Enter the required destination information. To confirm your input, select ✓ in the top right corner of the screen.

If there is more than one destination possible according to the information entered, a list of all matching destinations found is displayed. Select the desired address.

The destination details view is displayed. To start route guidance, select **Go**.

### POIs Entry

A Point of Interest (POI) is a specific location that might be of general interest, e.g. a petrol station, a parking area or a restaurant.

The data stored within the navigation system contains a great number of predefined POIs, which are indicated on the map (if activated, see *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ 198). You may also store individual POIs within the system,

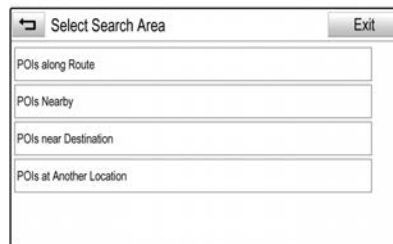
see "Creating and Downloading User Defined POIs (My POIs)" in *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ 198.

Those POIs are selectable as destinations via the POI main category My POIs.

To select a POI as a destination for route guidance, select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar and then select **POIs**. A list for search area selection is displayed.

### Setting a Search Location

Select one of the options.



### Note

The options 'POIs along Route' and 'POIs near Destination' are only available when route guidance is active.

If 'POIs at Another Location' is selected, a keyboard is displayed.

For a detailed description on the keyboards see *Operation* ⇨ 177.

Enter the desired location and confirm your entry. A list of POI categories is displayed.

### Searching POIs via Categories

Select one of the main categories in the list. A list with subcategories is displayed.

To display all POIs available in the main category, select **List All**. Scroll through the list and select the desired POI.

To display all POIs within one subcategory, select the subcategory.

Scroll through the list and select the desired POI. The destination details view is displayed.

## 208 Infotainment System - MyLink with Built-in Navigation

For more information on the POI selected, touch Info in the top right corner of the screen.

To start route guidance, select **Go**.

### Searching POIs via Name Input

To search for a particular POI, a category or a specific location, select **Spell Name** in the POI main categories list or in one of the subcategory lists.

A keyboard is displayed. For a detailed description on the keyboards see *Operation* ⇨ 177.

Enter the desired name or category. Select ✓ to confirm your input. The destination details view is displayed.

For more information on the POI selected, touch Info in the top right corner of the screen.

To start route guidance, select **Go**.

### Recent Destinations List

Select **RECENT**. A list of all recently entered destinations is displayed.



Select one of the entries. The destination details view is displayed.


To start route guidance, select **Go**.

### Contacts List

Select **CONTACTS**. The contacts list is displayed.

### Quick Function Icon

If there is only one address stored for a contact, a quick route icon is displayed next to the entry in the Contacts list.

Select  to directly display the destination details view.

To start route guidance, select **Go**.

### Contact Details View

If there is more than one address stored for a contact, select the desired contact's entry. The contact details view is displayed.

Select one of the addresses stored for the contact. The destination details view is displayed.

To start route guidance, select **Go**.

### Selecting an Address from the Map

Tap on the desired location on the map. The map centres around this location.



A red symbol is displayed at the location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.

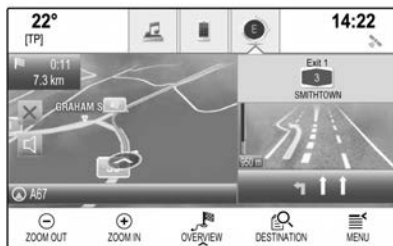


Tap on the label. The destination details view is displayed. To start route guidance, select **Go**.

### Waypoint Trips

A waypoint is an intermediate destination that is considered in the calculation of a route to its final destination.

To create a waypoint trip, you may add one or several waypoints. Enter or select the final destination of your waypoint trip and start route guidance.



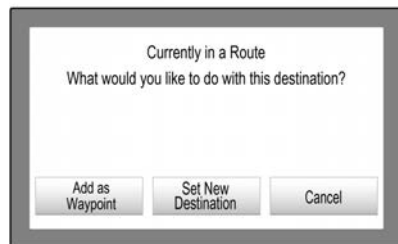
While under active route guidance, select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar of the map view.

Alternatively, touch the arrow symbol indicating your next turning manoeuvre on the right side of the screen to display the Route Guidance menu.

Select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar of the Route Guidance menu. Enter or select a new address.



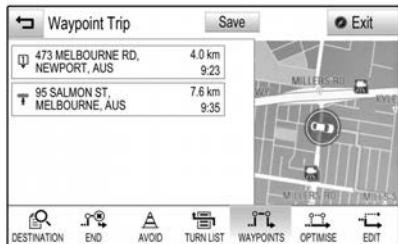
Select **Go**. You are prompted with a message.



## 210 Infotainment System - MyLink with Built-in Navigation

Select **Add as Waypoint**. The route is recalculated and the new destination is added as a waypoint to the current route.

If desired, enter further waypoints as described above.



To save the entire route with waypoints, select **Save**.

The waypoint trip is saved in the contacts list in the Saved Trips folder and designated according to its final destination. The saved waypoint trip can be recalled via the contacts list.

For a detailed description on how to edit a waypoint trip see *Guidance* ⇨ 211.

### New Destination

To set a new destination, you may cancel route guidance to the current destination and then enter a new destination. Or you may directly enter a new destination.

While under active route guidance, select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar of the map view.

Alternatively, touch the arrow symbol indicating your next turning manoeuvre on the right side of the screen to display the route guidance menu. Select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu.

Enter or select a new address. Select **Go**.

You are prompted with a message. Select **Set New Destination**. The route is recalculated and the new destination is set.

### Calling a Destination

After entering a destination and before starting route guidance, the destination details view is displayed.

To initiate a phone call to the selected location, select **Call**.

#### Note

The Call screen button is only available if a phone number is stored for the location.

### Storing Destinations

#### Contacts Entry

After entering a destination and before starting route guidance, the destination details view is displayed.

To save the destination in the contacts list, select **Save**.

For a detailed description on how to save an address in the contacts list see *Operation* ⇨ 177.

#### Note

The Save screen button is only available if the address has not yet been stored in the system.

## Favourite

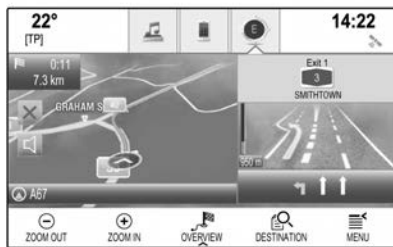
Favourites may be stored from almost all screen views. For a detailed description on how to store destination favourites see *Operation* ⇨ 177.

## Guidance

Route guidance is provided by the navigation system through visual instructions and voice prompts (voice guidance).

## Visual Instructions

Visual instructions are provided on the displays.



## Navigation Voice Prompts

Navigation voice prompts announce which direction to follow when approaching an intersection at which you need to turn. To activate the voice prompts function and set the volume, see "Navigation voice settings" below.

## Starting and Cancelling Route Guidance

### Starting Route Guidance

To start route guidance to a new destination chosen, select **Go** in the destination details view.

To directly start route guidance to the last destination chosen, select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Resume to**.

Route guidance to the last destination selected is restarted.




### Cancelling Route Guidance

To cancel route guidance, you may optionally:

- Touch **X** on the navigation map screen.
- Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Cancel Route**.
- Touch the arrow symbol indicating your next turning manoeuvre on the right side of the screen to display the route guidance menu. Select **END** in the interaction selector bar.

### Navigation Voice Settings

#### Mute

To temporarily mute the output of navigation voice prompts, select  on the left side of the map screen. The icon changes to . To unmute the system, select  again.

#### Voice Prompts

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Navigation Voice Preferences** to display the submenu.

If Voice Prompts - On is set, navigation voice prompts are read out by the system during active route guidance. Set **Voice Prompts - On** or **Voice Prompts - Off**.

If set to Off, no navigation voice prompts are provided by the system.

#### Voice Prompts During Phone Calls

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Navigation Voice Preferences** to display the submenu.

#### Select Prompts During Phone Calls.

If On is selected, navigation voice prompts are also read out during phone calls.

If Off is selected, no voice prompts are given out.

If Beeps is selected, a beep sounds instead of the announcement.

#### Volume

To adjust the volume of the voice prompts, select – or +.

#### Route Settings

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Routing Preferences** to display the submenu.

#### Route Style

To define by what criteria a route may be calculated, select **Route Style**. Select **Fast**, **Eco Friendly** or **Short** from the list.

If Eco Friendly has been selected, the eco-friendly route style may be adapted to the load of the vehicle. Select **Edit Eco Profile** to display the submenu.

Repeatedly select **Roof Load** and **Trailer** to toggle between the available load options.

Set the options as needed.

#### Road Selection

Select from the list which road types may be included in the calculation of the route.

#### Route Modification

To modify the route during active route guidance, touch the arrow symbol indicating your next turning manoeuvre on the right side of the screen. The route guidance menu is displayed.

#### Note

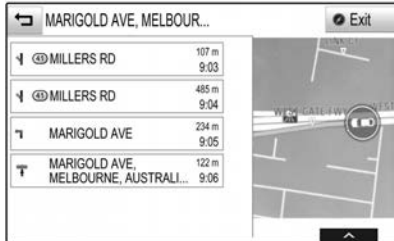
The route guidance menu may only be displayed if route guidance is active.

The route guidance menu provides additional options to change route settings during active route guidance.

### Displaying the Turn List

The turn list displays all streets on the calculated route, starting from the current location. Select **TURN LIST** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu.

The turn list is displayed and the next manoeuvre is read out by the system.



Each list entry may show the following information:

- Name of the street, motorway or motorway junction.
- Direction arrow.
- Distance to the next street on the route.
- Estimated arrival time to reach the next street.

To display all available information on a particular list item, select the list item and then select **Info** in the top line of the screen.

### Excluding Streets from Route Guidance

After route guidance has been started, you may exclude streets from the previously calculated route. The route is then recalculated bypassing the streets excluded.

Select **AVOID** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu. The turn list is displayed.

Select the street, motorway or motorway junction you wish to avoid. You are prompted with a message.

Select the desired distance option.

The respective street or motorway is displayed in the Avoided Areas section on top of the turn list indicated by a red ✓.

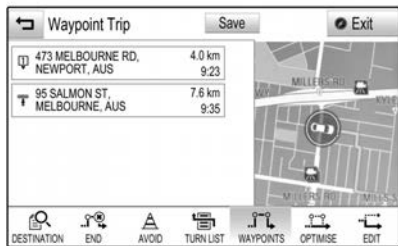
To re-include the avoided street or motorway into the route, deselect the list item.

### Displaying the Waypoint List

If you are in a waypoint trip, the route guidance menu comprises additional menu functions for waypoint trip modification.

The waypoint list displays all waypoints of the calculated waypoint trip, starting with the next upcoming waypoint.

Select **WAYPOINTS** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu. The waypoints list is displayed.



Each list entry may show the following information:

- Name or address of the waypoint.
- Distance to the next waypoint.
- Estimated arrival time to reach the next waypoint.

### Editing the Waypoint Trip

To arrange a waypoint trip as desired, select **EDIT** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu. The waypoints list is displayed.

To change the position of the waypoints within the list, select ▼ or ▲ next to the list items.

To delete a waypoint from the list, select **X**.

Select **Save** at the top of the screen to save the changes.

### Optimising the Waypoint Trip

If several waypoints have been added and the waypoint trip has been edited several times, you may want to rearrange the waypoints in the most efficient order.

Select **OPTIMISE** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu.

Wait until the waypoints list has been updated. Select **Save** at the top of the screen to save the changes.

## Voice Recognition

### Voice Recognition (General Information)

#### Embedded Speech Recognition

The infotainment system's embedded speech recognition enables you to operate various functions of the infotainment system via voice input.

It recognises commands and numeric sequences independently of the speaker.

The commands and numeric sequences can be spoken without a voice pause between the individual words. In the event of incorrect operation or commands, the speech recognition gives visual and/or acoustic feedback and requests you to re-enter the desired command.

Apart from this, the speech recognition acknowledges important commands and will query the voice input if necessary.



In general, there are different ways to speak commands for performing the desired actions.

## Note


To ensure that conversations inside the vehicle do not lead to unintentional triggering of the system functions, the speech recognition does not start until it has been activated.

## Input Order for Destination Addresses

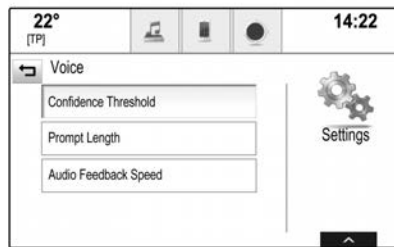
The order in which the parts of an address need to be entered using the speech recognition system is given by the system.

## Setting up Speech Recognition

Several settings and adaptations for the embedded speech recognition of the infotainment system can be performed.

Press  and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen.

Select **Voice** item to enter the submenu.



## Confidence Threshold

Depending on the option selected in the corresponding submenu, the speech recognition appears more or less 'confident' in correctly understanding your commands.

- **Confirm More:** If selected, the system asks you relatively often to confirm your commands. Consequently, the system performs the correct action in most cases.
- **Confirm Less:** If selected, the system asks you less often to confirm your voice inputs.

Consequently, the system might sometimes misinterpret your commands and not perform the correct action.

## Note

When starting to use the speech recognition, it may be advantageous to use the Confirm More setting. As you get more experienced and become familiar with how to pronounce your commands in a way so that the speech recognition understands you correctly, it may be advantageous to use the Confirm Less setting.

## Prompt Length

The length and the level of detail of the questions and statements the speech recognition gives can be adjusted in the corresponding submenu.

## Audio Feedback Speed

The speed with which the speech recognition asks questions or makes statements can be adjusted in the corresponding submenu.

If Medium is selected, the system's speech rate corresponds to natural speech.

### Note

When starting to use the speech recognition, it may be advantageous to use the Long setting. As you get more experienced, it may be advantageous to use the Short setting.

### Display "What Can I Say?" Tips

Depending on whether you want possible speech commands to be displayed on the screen, set Display "What Can I Say?" Tips to **On** or **Off**.

### Voice Pass-thru Application

The infotainment system's voice pass-thru application allows access to the speech recognition commands on your smartphone.

The availability of this function depends on your smartphone. For more information on compatibility, see [www.holden.com.au](http://www.holden.com.au)

## Voice Recognition (Usage)


### Embedded Speech Recognition

#### Activating Speech Recognition

##### Note

Speech recognition is not available during an active phone call.

#### Activation via the steering wheel button:

Press  on the steering wheel.

The audio system mutes, a voice output message prompts you to say a command, and help menus with the most important commands currently available are shown on the infotainment system display.

As soon as the speech recognition is ready for voice input, a beep is heard. The speech recognition symbol in the upper left corner of the help menu changes from white to red.

You can now say a voice command to initiate a system function (e.g. playing a preset radio station).

#### Activation via the infotainment system display **VOICE** screen button:


Select **VOICE** in the interaction selector bar of an infotainment system display main menu.

The audio system mutes, a voice output message prompts you to say a command, and a help menu with the most important commands currently available is shown on the infotainment system display.


As soon as the speech recognition is ready for voice input, a beep is heard. The speech recognition symbol on the right side of the help menu changes from black to red.

You can now say a voice command, see description above.

#### Adjusting the Volume of Voice Prompts




Press  + or – on the steering wheel to increase or decrease volume.

### Interrupting a Voice Prompt

As an experienced user, you can interrupt a voice prompt by briefly pressing  on the steering wheel. A beep is heard immediately, the speech recognition symbol changes to red, and a command can be stated without having to wait.

### Cancelling a Dialogue Sequence

There are various ways to cancel a dialogue sequence and to deactivate the speech recognition:


- Say **Cancel** or **Exit**.
- Press  on the steering wheel.
- If the speech recognition session was started via the VOICE screen button on the centre display, you may alternatively:
  - Press  on the infotainment system display.
  - Select  or **Exit** in the help menu.

In the following situations, a dialogue sequence is automatically cancelled:

- If you do not say any command for a certain period of time (by default you are prompted three times to say a command).
- If you say commands that are not recognised by the system, by default you are prompted three times to say a correct command.

### Operation via Speech Commands

The speech recognition can understand commands that are either naturally stated in sentence form, or direct commands stating the application and the action. For best results:

- Listen for the voice prompt and wait for the beep before saying a command or replying.
- Say **Help** or read the example commands on the screen.
- The voice prompt can be interrupted by pressing  again.

- Wait for the beep and then speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow. Use short and direct commands.

Usually commands can be spoken in a single command.

For example, "Call David Smith", "Play" followed by the artist or song name, "Tune to" followed by the radio waveband and frequency/ station name, or "Find address" followed by the address e.g. "123 Main Road, Smithtown".

For complex commands or when information is missing, the system starts a dialogue sequence.

When searching for a Point of Interest, only major chains may be selected by name. Chains are businesses with at least 20 locations.

For other POIs, say the name of a category, e.g. **Restaurants**, **Shopping centres**, or **Hospital**.

If you say **Phone** or **Phone commands**, the system understands that a phone call is requested and responds with relevant questions until enough details are gathered.

If the phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example "Call David Smith at work".



### Selecting List Items

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt asks to confirm or select an item from that list. A list item may be manually selected, or by speaking the line number of the item.

The list on a speech recognition screen functions the same as a list on other screens. Manually scrolling the list on a screen during a speech recognition session suspends the current speech recognition event and plays a prompt like "Make your selection from the list using the manual controls, press the back button on the faceplate, or press the back screen button to try again".


If no manual selection is made within 15 seconds, the speech recognition session terminates, you are prompted with a message, and the former screen is redisplayed.

### The "Back" Command

To return to the previous menu, optionally: say **Back**, press  **BACK** on the control panel, or press .

### The "Help" Command


After saying **Help**, the help prompt for the current screen is read aloud. Additionally, the prompt is displayed on the screen.

To interrupt the help prompt, press . A beep is heard. You may say a command.



### Voice Pass-thru Application

The voice pass-thru application of the infotainment system allows access to the voice recognition commands on your smartphone.


### Activating Speech Recognition

Press and hold  on the steering wheel until a speech recognition icon is displayed.

### Adjusting Voice Prompt Volume

Turn  on the control panel or press  + or – on the steering wheel to increase or decrease the volume.

### Deactivating Speech Recognition

Press  on the steering wheel. The speech recognition session ends.

## Phone

### Bluetooth

#### General Information

The phone portal allows you to have mobile phone conversations via a vehicle microphone and the vehicle speakers as well as operating the most important mobile phone functions via the infotainment system in the vehicle.

To use the phone portal, the mobile phone must be connected to the infotainment system via Bluetooth®.

Not all phone functions are supported by every mobile phone. The usable phone functions depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. You can find further information on this in the operating instructions for your mobile phone, or you can enquire about them with your network provider.

#### Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

#### Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.  
Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

### Understanding Bluetooth Wireless Technology

Bluetooth wireless technology establishes a wireless link between two devices supported with Bluetooth.

Terminology:

- **Pairing:** To create a secure link between the infotainment system and a Bluetooth device. Multiple devices can be paired and retained in the infotainment system.
- **Connection:** A previously paired device can be connected which enables the Bluetooth functions to be used, such as hands-free phone, audio, etc. One device can be connected at a time.

After the initial pairing, the device can connect automatically to the infotainment system each time you turn them on.

Bluetooth allows wireless transmission of information within close range by using 2.45 GHz frequency short-distance wireless telecommunication technologies.


### Note

- There may be restrictions on using Bluetooth wireless technology in some locations.
- Due to the variety of Bluetooth devices and their firmware versions, your device may respond differently when performing over Bluetooth.
- Any inquiries regarding your phone's Bluetooth functionality, refer to the device manual.

### Pairing and Connecting Bluetooth

To use the Bluetooth feature, make sure the Bluetooth on your device is turned on and your device is in discoverable mode. Refer to the user guide for the Bluetooth device.

### Pairing via the Settings Application

1. Press  on the control panel. Select **Bluetooth** to display the submenu.
2. Select **Pair Device**.  
Alternatively, select **Device Management** to display the device list and then select **Pair Device**.
3. A message is displayed on the infotainment system indicating the name and PIN code of the infotainment system.
4. Start Bluetooth searching on the Bluetooth device to be paired.
5. Confirm the pairing procedure:
  - If the SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) is supported: Compare the PIN code (if demanded) and confirm the messages on the infotainment system and the Bluetooth device.

- If SSP (secure simple pairing) is not supported: If desired, select Set PIN to change the PIN code of the infotainment system. A keypad is displayed. Enter the new PIN code and confirm your input. Enter the infotainment PIN code on the Bluetooth device and confirm your input.
6. The infotainment system and the device are paired and the device list is displayed.  
If the connection fails, failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.
  7. If available on the Bluetooth device, phone book and calls lists are downloaded to the infotainment system. If required, confirm the message on your smartphone.


### Note

- For the contacts to be read by the infotainment system, they have to be stored in the phone

memory of the mobile phone. If this function is not supported by the Bluetooth device, a corresponding message is displayed on the Infotainment system.

- The infotainment system can pair up to five Bluetooth devices.
- If the connection fails, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.


#### Pairing via the Phone Application

1. Press  and select **PHONE** on the home screen.
2. Select **Pair Device**.
3. Proceed from the previous Step 3 above.
4. If the device has been successfully paired, the phone menu is displayed.


#### Note

If the Bluetooth connection fails, a failure message is displayed.

#### Connecting a Paired Device


1. Press  and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen. Select **Bluetooth** to display the submenu.
2. Select **Device Management** to display the device list.
3. Select the Bluetooth device you wish to connect.
4. The device is connected and displayed within the Connected field of the device list.

#### Disconnecting a Device

1. Press  and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen. Select **Bluetooth** to display the submenu.
2. Select **Device Management** to display the device list.
3. Select **X** beside the Bluetooth device currently connected. You are prompted with a message.
4. Select **Yes** to disconnect the device.

#### Deleting the Bluetooth Device

If you no longer need to use the Bluetooth device, you can delete it.

1. Press  and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen. Select **Bluetooth** to display the submenu.
2. Select **Device Management** to display the device list.
3. Select – beside the Bluetooth device to be deleted. You are prompted with a message.
4. Select **Yes** to delete the device.

#### Text Messaging

The Text application allows text messages to be received and replied to via the infotainment system.

#### Note

If the vehicle is travelling faster than 8 km/h, some functions of the text application may not be available.


### Prerequisites

The following prerequisites must be met in order to use the Text application:

- The Bluetooth function of the phone must be activated.
- The phone must be paired and connected to the infotainment system. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ 219.
- The phone must support Bluetooth Message Access Profile (BT MAP).
- Depending on the phone:
  - It may be required to set the device to "visible".
  - It may be required to manually allow access to the text messages function on the phone.
  - Settings such as "Show Notifications" or "Allow Notifications" (iPhone) or "Accept and Activate Message Access Profile" (Android) must be on.

See the operating instructions for the device or go to the Owner's page on the Holden website for assistance.

### Starting the Text Application

Press  and select **TEXT** on the home screen.



If a new text message is received, you are prompted with a message. Select one of the screen buttons to enter the **TEXT** application.

### Note

Text message alerts are only displayed if Text Alerts in the text settings menu is set to **On**.


### Listening to a Message

Select **INBOX** in the interaction selector bar.

The text messages stored on the phone are displayed in a list.

### Note

Depending on the phone, not all text messages stored on the phone are displayed in the Inbox.

To listen to a message, select  beside the message.

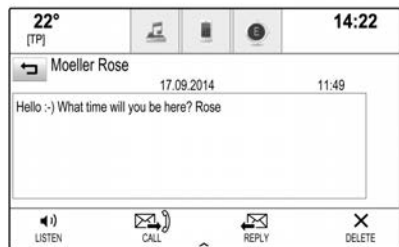
Alternatively, select the desired message to display the message view. Select **LISTEN** in the interaction selector bar.

### Viewing a Message

Select **INBOX** in the interaction selector bar. The text messages stored on the phone are displayed in a list.



Select the desired message to display the complete message text.



### Calling the Sender

Select **INBOX** in the interaction selector bar. The text messages stored on the phone are displayed in a list.

Select the desired message to display the message view.

Select **CALL** in the interaction selector bar. The sender of the message is called.

### Replying to a Message

#### Note

Depending on the phone, the reply function may not be supported.

Select **INBOX** in the interaction selector bar. The text messages stored on the phone are displayed in a list.

Select the desired message to display the message view.

Select **REPLY** in the interaction selector bar. A list of predefined messages is displayed.

Select the desired predefined text message. If none of the predefined messages serves your purpose, you can write a new message: see "Manage Predefined Messages" below.

### Deleting a Message

Select **INBOX** in the interaction selector bar. The text messages stored on the phone are displayed in a list.

Select the desired message to display the message view.

To delete the text message, select **DELETE** in the interaction selector bar.

### Device List

Select **PHONES** to display the device list.

### Text Settings

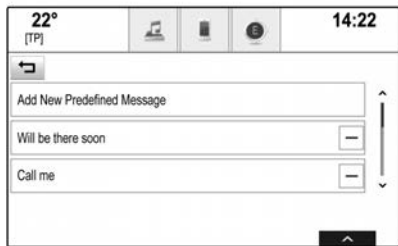
Select **SETTINGS** to enter the Settings menu.

### Text Alerts

If you wish an alert to pop-up when a new text message is received, set **Text Alerts - On**.

### Manage Predefined Messages

Select **Manage Predefined Messages** to display a list of all predefined messages.



### Adding a New Message:

#### Note

Predefined messages can only be entered when the vehicle is stationary.

Select **Add New Predefined Message**. A keyboard is displayed.

Enter the desired message text and confirm your input. The new message is added to the list of predefined messages.

### Deleting a Predefined Message:

To delete a predefined message, select – beside the message you wish to delete.

## Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

### Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

Apple CarPlay™ and/or Android Auto™ capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. The infotainment display will indicate a PROJECTION icon on the Home screen.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:


1. Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Apple iPhone® or Android™ phone by using a genuine USB connection cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use your device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ 97.

### Note

Ensure SIRI is activated on your iPhone.

The PROJECTION icon on the Home screen will change to Android Auto™ or Apple CarPlay™ depending on the phone. Apple CarPlay and/or Android Auto may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, touch the CARPLAY or ANDROID AUTO icon on the Home screen to launch.

### Activating / Deactivating Phone Projection

Press  and then select **SETTINGS**. Scroll through the list and select **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto** to display a submenu. Select **On** or **Off**. To display a list of all devices registered for this function, select **Manage – – Devices**.

For further information on how to set up Apple CarPlay and Android Auto in the vehicle, see [www.holden.com.au](http://www.holden.com.au).

CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. For further information, support and compatible devices, see [www.apple.com](http://www.apple.com) or [www.google.com](http://www.google.com). Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc., Android Auto™ is a trademark of Google Inc.


## Hands-Free Phone

Once a connection via Bluetooth has been set up between your mobile phone and the infotainment system, you can operate many of the phone functions.

### Note

Not every mobile phone supports all functions of the Phone application. Therefore, deviations from the range of functions described below are possible.

## Phone Application

Press  and select **PHONE** on the home screen.


The Phone application comprises different views accessible via tabs. Select the desired tab.

### Note

The phone main menu is only available if a mobile phone is paired and connected to the infotainment system via Bluetooth. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ 219.

## Initiating a Phone Call

### Keypad

Press  and select **PHONE** on the home screen.


Select **KEYPAD** in the interaction selector bar. The keypad is displayed.



Enter the desired number and select **Call**. The number is dialed.

To dial a speed dial number, enter the number and touch and hold the last digit. The number is dialed.

### Contacts

Press  and select **PHONE** on the home screen.


Select **CONTACTS** in the interaction selector bar. The contacts list is displayed.



For a detailed description of the contacts lists see *Operation* ⇨ 177.

Scroll to the desired contacts entry.

### Quick Function


If there is only one number stored for a contact, a quick dial icon is displayed next to the entry in the Contacts list. Select  to directly initiate the call.

### Contact Details View

If more than one number is stored for a contact, select the contact. The contact details view is displayed.

Select one of the phone numbers stored for the contact. The number is dialed.


### Calls Lists

Press  and select **PHONE** on the home screen.

Select **RECENT** in the interaction selector bar. The recent calls list is displayed.



### Note

Missed calls are highlighted in red in the recent calls list and indicated by a  next to the phone icon in the application tray.

Select one of the phone numbers stored in the recent calls list. The number is dialed.

### Favourites

Reveal the favourites page. As required, scroll through the pages. Select the desired favourite screen button. See *Operation* ⇨ 177.

### Incoming Phone Call

#### Taking a Phone Call

If an audio source is active when a call comes in, the audio source is muted and remains muted until the call is ended.

A message with the caller's name or number is displayed at the bottom of the screen.



To answer the call, select **Answer** in the message.

### Rejecting a Phone Call

To reject the call, select **Ignore** in the message.

### Changing the Ringtone

Press **⏏** and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen.

Select **Bluetooth** to display the submenu and then select **Ringtones**. A list of all phones paired to the infotainment system is displayed.

Select the desired phone. A list of all ringtones available for the phone is displayed.

Select the desired ringtone.

### Functions During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the in-call view is displayed.



### Ending a Phone Call

Select **End** to end the call.

### Deactivating the Microphone

Select **Mute** to temporarily deactivate the microphone. The screen button changes to Unmute.

To reactivate the microphone, select **Unmute**.

### Deactivating the Hands-free Function

To continue the conversation on your mobile phone, select **Handset**. The screen button changes to Handsfree.

To reactivate the hands-free function, select **Handsfree**.

### Second Phone Call

#### Initiating a Second Phone Call

To initiate a second phone call, select **Add** in the in-call view. The phone menu is displayed.

Initiate a second phone call as described in "Initiating a Phone Call" above.

To cancel the initiation of the second call and return to the in-call view, select **Current Call**.

Both calls are displayed in the in-call view.



### Second Incoming Phone Call

A message with the caller's name or number is displayed at the bottom of the in-call view. Select **Answer** or **Ignore** in the message.

### Ending the Phone Calls

To end both calls, select **End** at the bottom of the screen.



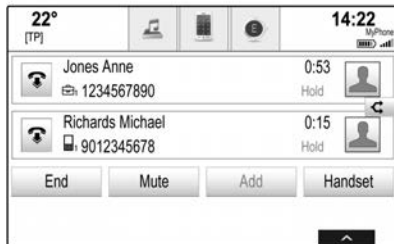
To end just one of the calls, select the screen button next to the call.

### Conference Call



Select the screen button to merge the two calls. Both calls become active.

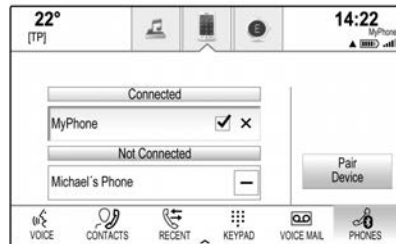
The screen button changes.



To unmerge the calls, select the screen button.


### Phones

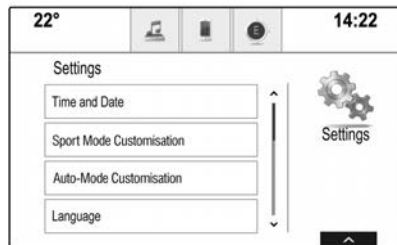
Select **PHONES** in the interaction selector bar to display the device list.



For a detailed description see *Bluetooth* ⇨ 219.

## Settings

Various settings for the infotainment system and vehicle can be made via the SETTINGS menu. Press  and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen.



### Note

Settings menus and functions may vary depending on your vehicle option.

### Time and Date

To set the time and date see *Clock* ⇨ 96.

## Sport Mode Customisation

Displays the interactive drive control system sport mode settings. See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ 265.

## Auto-Mode Customisation

Displays the interactive drive control system auto-mode settings. See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ 265.

## Language

The language currently active is marked with ✓.

## Valet Mode

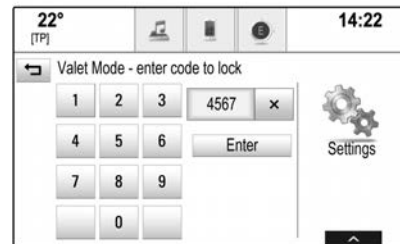
If valet mode is activated, all vehicle displays are locked and no changes may be performed within the system.

### Note

Vehicle-related messages and the rear view camera remain enabled.

## Locking the System

Scroll through the list and select **Valet Mode**. A keypad is displayed.

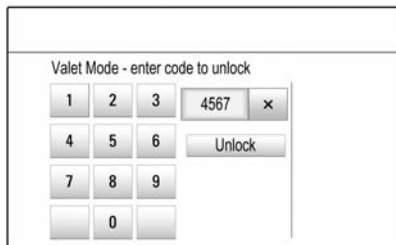


Enter a four-digit code and select **Enter**.

The keypad is re-displayed. Confirm the first input, by re-entering the four-digit code and select **Lock**. The system is locked.

## Unlocking the System

Turn the infotainment system on. A keypad is displayed.



Enter the four-digit code and select **Unlock**. The system is unlocked.

### Forgotten PIN Code

To reset the PIN code to the default setting, contact your dealer.

### Radio

Adjusts the radio application settings. See *Operation* ⇨ 177.

### Vehicle

Adjusts the vehicle personalisation settings. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

### Bluetooth

Displays the Bluetooth settings. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ 219.

### Apple CarPlay / Android Auto

Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto settings. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ 224.

### Voice

Displays the voice recognition settings. See *Voice Recognition (General Information)* ⇨ 214 or *Voice Recognition (Usage)* ⇨ 216.

### Display

Scroll through the list and select **Display**.



### Mode

Select **Mode** to enter the submenu. Depending on the external lighting conditions, select **Day** or **Night**. If you select **Auto**, the system automatically adjusts the display.



### Calibrate Touchscreen

Select **Calibrate Touchscreen** to enter the submenu.



Follow the instructions on the screen, touching the points indicated. The touchscreen is calibrated.

### Turn display Off

Select **Turn Display Off** to turn off the display.

To turn the display back on, touch the touchscreen or press a button on the control panel.

### Rear Camera

Displays the rear vision camera settings. See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC)* ⇨ 268.

### Return to Factory Settings

Scroll through the list and select **Return to Factory Settings**.

### Restore Vehicle Settings

Select **Restore Vehicle Settings** to restore all vehicle personalisation settings. A warning message is displayed. Select **Restore**. The settings are reset.

### Clear All Private Data

Select **Clear All Private Data** to delete the following data:

- Paired Bluetooth devices.
- Stored phone books.
- Vehicle contacts list.
- Destination lists.
- Favourites.

A warning message is displayed. Select **Delete**. The data is deleted.

### Restore Radio Settings

Select **Restore Radio Settings** to reset the following data:

- Tone settings.
- Volume settings.
- Speech settings.
- Application tray.
- Contacts sources.

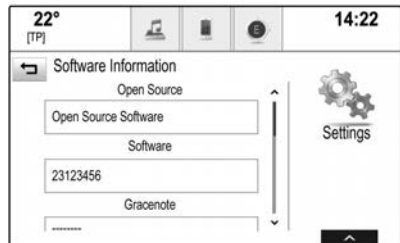
A warning message is displayed. Select **Restore**. The settings are reset.

## 232 Infotainment System - MyLink with Built-in Navigation

---

### Software Information

Scroll through the list and select **Software Information**.



A list of version numbers of all items loaded to the system is displayed.

System update To update your system software, contact your dealer.

# Climate Controls

**Climate Control Systems**  
 Electronic Climate Control System ..... 233

**Air Vents**  
 Adjustable Air Vents ..... 239  
 Fixed Air Vents ..... 239

**Maintenance**  
 Air Intake ..... 240  
 Air Conditioning Regular Operation ..... 240  
 Service ..... 240

# Climate Control Systems

## Electronic Climate Control System

The dual zone climate control system allows individual temperature settings for the driver and front passenger sides.

In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.

### Controls



Depending on vehicle model, the following features may be available:

- Control dial for driver temperature adjustment.
- Control dial for front passenger temperature adjustment.
- **CLIMATE** : Enters the Climate Setting menu in the infotainment display.
- ☼ or ☾ : Fan speed increase and decrease.
- **ON/OFF** : Turns the climate control system on or off.
- **AUTO** : Automatic mode.
- 🚗 : Manual air recirculation.
- 🌬️ MAX : Windscreen demisting and defrosting.
- 🚗 REAR : Heated rear window and exterior mirrors.
- 🧴 : Heated seats.
- 🌬️ : Ventilated seats.

Activated functions are indicated by an LED.



## 234 Climate Controls

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

### Climate Setting Menu




Press **CLIMATE** to display the Climate Setting menu in the infotainment display. Depending on vehicle options, the following settings may be available:

- Air distribution .
- Fan speed .
- Temperature for driver and front passenger side, e.g. 23°/25°.

- Dual zone temperature synchronisation **Sync**.
- Air conditioning on or off **A/C ON/OFF**.

Press the touch-screen buttons.

The Climate Setting menu can also be displayed by touching **Climate** or  in the infotainment display.

Setting changes via the air conditioner controls are indicated in a pop-up in the infotainment display.

### Automatic Mode



Basic settings for automatic control with maximum comfort:



- Press **AUTO**. Air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.
- Cooling must be activated in the Climate Setting menu for optimal cooling and demisting. Press **CLIMATE** to enter the menu and press the touch button to switch on air conditioning (A/C).
- Set the preselected temperatures separately for the driver and front passenger using the left and right control dials. The temperature is indicated briefly in the displays beside the control dials and in the Climate Setting menu.

## Manual Settings


Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the following functions as described below.

### Fan Speed



Press the upper button  or lower button  to increase or decrease fan speed. The fan speed is indicated as pop-up in the infotainment display.

Fan speed can also be changed by the touch buttons in the Climate Setting menu. Press **CLIMATE** to

enter the menu. Pressing the lower button  for longer turns the fan and cooling off.


To return to automatic mode press **AUTO**.


### Air Distribution




Press **CLIMATE** to enter the menu.

Touch:

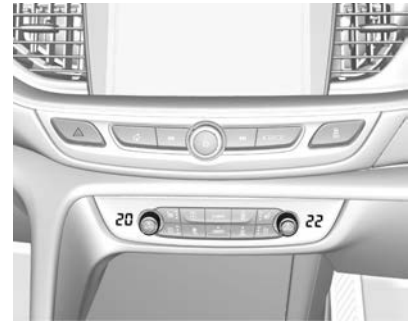
 : Windscreen and front door windows.

 : Head area and rear seats via adjustable air vents.

 : Front and rear foot well and windscreen.

To return to automatic air distribution press **AUTO**.

### Temperature Preselection



Set the preselected temperatures separately for the driver and front passenger to the desired value using the left and right control dials.

- The dial on the passenger side changes the temperature for the front passenger side.

## 236 Climate Controls

- The dial on the driver's side changes the temperature for the driver's side, or for both sides, depending on whether synchronisation (SYNC) is activated.

Temperature is indicated in the displays beside the control dials and as pop-up in the infotainment display.

If the minimum temperature **Lo** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling if the A/C is on.

If the maximum temperature **Hi** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

### Note

If A/C is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ 246.

### Dual Zone Temperature Synchronisation

Press **CLIMATE** to enter the Climate Setting menu. Touch **SYNC** to link the front passenger's side temperature setting to the driver's side.

- If the driver's side control dial is adjusted, both sides will be set at the same temperature.
- If the front passenger side control dial is adjusted, synchronisation is deactivated and individual temperatures can be set.

### Air Conditioning (A/C)




Press **CLIMATE** to enter the Climate Setting menu and touch the button to turn the air conditioning on or off; **A/C ON** or **A/C OFF**.


Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and the climate control system fan is operating.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when the outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore, condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle. This is normal.

## Manual Air Recirculation



Press  to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press  again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

 **Warning**


The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. The quality of passenger

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

When operating without air conditioning, air humidity increases and mist may form inside the windows.


In warm and very humid ambient conditions, mist may form on the outside of the windscreen when cold air is directed towards it. If this occurs, activate the windscreen wipers and deactivate .

**Automatic Air Recirculation**


If fitted, an air humidity sensor automatically sets the system to external air if internal air humidity is too high.


## Window Demisting and Defrosting



Press  **MAX**. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- Switch on the air conditioning **A/C ON** in the setting menu by pressing **CLIMATE**, if required.



Switch on heated rear window .


- To return to previous mode press  again. To return to automatic mode press **AUTO**.

## 238 Climate Controls

See *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ 45.

### Note

If  is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again.

If  is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ 246.

### Climate Control System Deactivation or Activation



Air conditioning, fan and automatic mode can be switched off by pressing **ON/OFF**.

When the system is deactivated, the LED in the ON/OFF button is not illuminated.

Activate the system by pressing **ON/OFF** again or **AUTO**. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

### Basic Settings

The following settings can be changed:

- Fan speed regulation in automatic mode.
- Automatic rear window heating.
- Automatic windscreen dehumidification.
- Automatic seat heating

See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

### Heated Exterior Mirrors

See *Heated Mirrors* ⇨ 41.

### Heated Seats

See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ 58, *Heated Rear Seats* ⇨ 63.

### Ventilated Seats

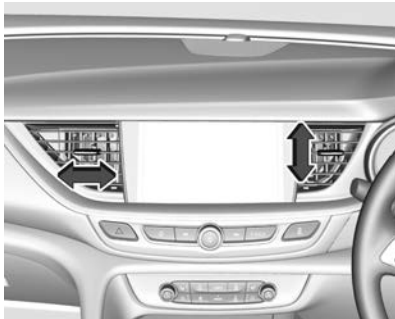
See *Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ 58.



## Air Vents

### Adjustable Air Vents

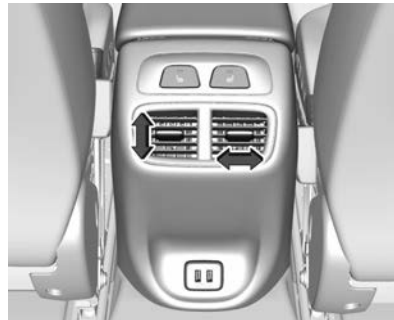
At least one air vent must be open while the climate control system is on.



Centre air vents in the instrument panel.



Outer vents in the instrument panel.



Air vents for rear passengers.

Direct air flow by tilting and swivelling the slats. To close the vent, swivel the slats sideways.

### **Warning**

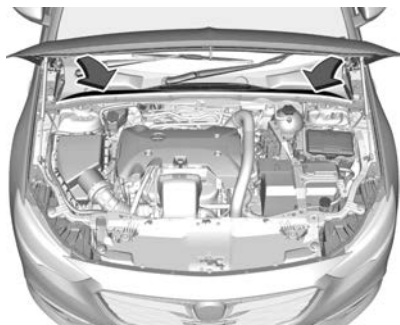
Do not attach objects to the vents. Damage or injury may occur.

### Fixed Air Vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen and door windows and in the footwells.

## Maintenance

### Air Intake



The air intake in front of the windshield in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake.

Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

### Cabin Air Filter

Change the cabin air filter according to the maintenance schedule for maximum effect. Refer to your Service and Warranty booklet.

### Note

If driving in dusty conditions, the cabin air filter may require more frequent maintenance. Contact a dealer.

### Air Conditioning Regular Operation

To ensure continuously efficient performance, the air conditioner must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year.

### Service

For optimal cooling performance, have the climate control system serviced according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to your Service and Warranty booklet.

# Driving and Operating

## Driving Information

Driving Environment ..... 242

## Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In ..... 243

Power Button ..... 243

Starting the Engine ..... 244

Retained Accessory

Power (RAP) ..... 245

Overrun Cut-Off ..... 246

Automatic Engine Start/Stop

Feature ..... 246

Parking ..... 248

## Engine Exhaust

Engine Exhaust ..... 249

Catalytic Converter ..... 249

## Diesel Particulate Filter

Diesel Particulate Filter ..... 249

## AdBlue

AdBlue (Diesel) ..... 251

## Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission ..... 254

Transmission Display ..... 254

Shift Lever ..... 255

Manual Mode ..... 256

Electronic Driving

Programs ..... 257

Fault ..... 258

Interruption of Power

Supply ..... 258

## Drive Systems

All-Wheel Drive ..... 259

## Brakes

Brakes ..... 260

Antilock Brake

System (ABS) ..... 260

Electric Parking Brake ..... 261

Brake Assist ..... 262

Hill Start Assist (HSA) ..... 262

## Ride Control Systems

Traction Control

System (TCS) ..... 263

Electronic Stability

Control (ESC) ..... 264

Interactive Drive Control

System ..... 265

## Driver Assistance Systems

Driver Assistance Systems ... 268

Rear Vision Camera (RVC) ... 268

Surround Vision System ..... 272

Parking Assist ..... 275

Advanced Parking Assist ..... 278

Cruise Control ..... 282

Speed Limiter ..... 285

Adaptive Cruise Control ..... 286

Forward Collision Alert (FCA)

System ..... 293

Following Distance Indication

System ..... 296

Autonomous Emergency

Braking (AEB) ..... 297

Front Pedestrian Protection

System ..... 300

Side Blind Zone

Alert (SBZA) ..... 303

Lane Change Alert (LCA) ..... 304

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) ..... 306

## Fuel

Fuel ..... 308

Recommended Fuel ..... 310

Filling the Tank ..... 311

## Trailer Towing

Trailer Towing ..... 314

Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ... 317

## Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical

Equipment ..... 317

## **Driving Information**

### **Driving Environment**

#### **Before Entering the Vehicle**

Check the windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.

Visually check tyre inflation. Check tyre pressures weekly.

#### **Before Driving Off**

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.
3. Adjust the rear view mirrors.
4. Fasten the seat belts.
5. Check the instrument cluster indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on and go off once the engine is started. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ 99.

### **Control of the Vehicle**

#### **Never Coast with the Engine Not Running**

Many systems will not function in this situation, e.g. brake servo unit, power steering.

Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

#### **Idle Boost**

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to the battery's condition, the power output of the alternator must be increased. This may be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

#### **Floor Mats**

To ensure that pedal travel is uninhibited, use only floor mats which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver's side.

### **Warning**

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal.

### **Steering**

If power steering assistance is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

## Starting and Operating

### New Vehicle Break-In

During the first 1000 km of driving use moderate acceleration, do not make full-throttle starts and do not drive at any one constant speed. Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

During the first drive, odours may be noticed due to protective wax and oil evaporating off the exhaust system. Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

During the running-in period, fuel and engine oil consumption may be slightly higher. Additionally, the diesel particle filter's cleaning process may occur more often. See *Diesel Particulate Filter* ⇨ 249.

Autostops may be inhibited to allow for charging of the vehicle battery, etc. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ 246.

### Power Button



Pressing ENGINE START/STOP cycles the ignition through the following Modes. The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be inside the vehicle.

#### Accessory Power Mode

Press ENGINE START/STOP once without pressing the brake pedal.

The yellow LED in the button illuminates and the steering wheel lock is released. Some electrical functions are operable, the ignition is off.

### Ignition-on Power Mode

Press and hold ENGINE START/STOP for six seconds without pressing the brake pedal.

The green LED in the button illuminates; diesel engine is preheating. Instrument cluster indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

### Engine Start

Press ENGINE START/STOP briefly while pressing the brake pedal with the shift lever in **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral). See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 244.

### Ignition-off

When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake and engage **P** (Park).

Press ENGINE START/STOP briefly. Some functions remain active until the driver's door is opened.

### Emergency Engine Shut-off During Driving

Press ENGINE START/STOP for more than two seconds, or press twice briefly within five seconds. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 244.

### Steering Wheel Lock

The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been turned off.
- The driver's door is opened.

To release the steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and turn on Accessory Mode or start the engine directly.

### Operation in Case of Failure

If the RKE transmitter battery is depleted or the transmitter fails, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) may display a **No Remote Detected** or **Replace Battery in Remote Key** message when you try to start the vehicle.



1. Open the cover of the centre console in front of the shift lever.
2. Place the RKE transmitter in the transmitter pocket beside the power outlet, with the buttons facing up as shown.

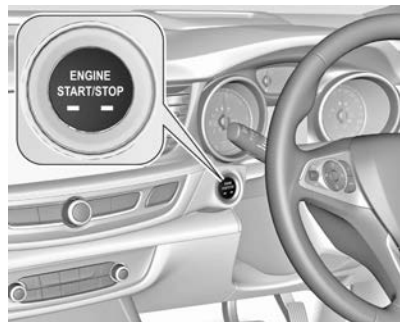
Other objects, e.g. other keys, transponders, tags, coins, etc. must be removed from the pocket.

3. Press the brake pedal and press ENGINE START/STOP.

To turn off the engine, press ENGINE START/STOP again and remove the RKE transmitter from the transmitter pocket.

This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the RKE transmitter battery as soon as possible, see *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ 21. For unlocking or locking the doors, see *Door Locks* ⇨ 26.

### Starting the Engine



Press the brake pedal and move the shift lever to **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral).

Do not operate the accelerator pedal.

Press ENGINE START/STOP briefly: an automatic starter control procedure operates with a short delay until the engine is running.

To switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake and engage **P**. Press ENGINE START/STOP briefly.

#### Note

If **P** is not engaged a chime will sound.

### Emergency Engine Shut-off During Driving

If the engine needs to be turned off during driving in an emergency situation, press ENGINE START/STOP for more than two seconds or press twice briefly within five seconds.



**Danger**

Turning the engine off whilst driving may cause loss of power assistance to the brake and steering systems. Driver assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled. Lighting and tail lamps will extinguish.

Therefore shut off the engine and ignition while driving only in case of an emergency.

### Automatic Starter Control

This function controls the engine starting procedure. The driver does not need to hold ENGINE START/STOP pressed.

Once applied, the system will continue starting automatically until the engine is running or for a certain period of time.

Due to a checking procedure, there may be a short delay until the engine starts.

Possible reasons for a non-starting engine include:

- The brake pedal is not pressed or the shift lever is not in **P** or **N**.
- Time-out occurred.

### Turbo Engine Warm-up

Upon engine start-up, the available engine torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. This limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

### Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The following electronic systems can operate until the driver's door is opened, or for 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off:

- Power windows.
- Sunroof.
- Power outlets.

### Overrun Cut-Off

The fuel supply to the engine is automatically cut-off during an overrun, e.g. when driving down a hill with the shift lever in D and the accelerator pedal released.

Depending on driving conditions, the overrun cut-off may be deactivated.

### Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature

The engine start-stop system helps to save fuel and reduce the exhaust emissions.

When conditions allow, it performs an Autostop and turns off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light. The ignition remains on.

#### Activation

The engine start-stop system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions stated further in this section are fulfilled.

### Deactivation



The engine start-stop system can be deactivated manually by pressing **(A) OFF**. Deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button illuminates.

### Autostop

#### Indication



An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer. After restarting, the engine speed is indicated.

During an Autostop, heating and brake performance will be maintained.

#### Conditions for an Autostop

The engine start-stop system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.



- The engine start-stop system is not manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is fully closed.
- The driver's door is closed and the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is above -5 °C.
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The self-cleaning function of the diesel particulate filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop. Immediately after freeway driving, an Autostop may be inhibited.

### **Vehicle Battery Discharge Protection**

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the engine start-stop system.

### **Power Saving Measures**

During an Autostop, several electrical features, such as the heated rear window, are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system may also be reduced to save power.

### **Restart of the Engine by the Driver**

Release the brake pedal or move shift lever out of **D** into **N** or **P** to restart the engine.

### **Restart of the Engine by the Engine Start-Stop System**

The shift lever must be in **D** (Drive) to enable an automatic restart. If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the engine start-stop system:

- The engine start-stop system is manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- The engine temperature is too low.
- The charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level.
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient.
- The vehicle is being driven at least at walking speed.
- The climate control system requests an engine start.

## 248 Driving and Operating

- The air conditioning is manually switched on.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.


If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to a power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

### Parking

1. Apply the electric park brake. Check the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.
2. Select **P** (Park).
3. Close all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off, remove the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and exit the vehicle.

#### Note

For vehicles with a turbocharger: After running at high engine speed or with high engine loads, allow the engine to idle in **P** or **N** for approx. 30 seconds before turning off. This will help protect the turbocharger.

5. Press the  button on the RKE transmitter, or press the lock/unlock button on a door handle (with the RKE transmitter within 1 m of the door handle) to lock all doors.

#### Note

The engine fan may keep running for several minutes after the ignition has been turned off. This is normal.

#### Warning

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where combustible

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gases are hazardous, especially if they concentrate in closed rooms.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space such as a closed garage or underground car park.

## Engine Exhaust

### Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Avoid driving with an open tailgate, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

## Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer as soon as possible.

### Caution

Fuel grades other than those listed in this manual could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components.

Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

## Diesel Particulate Filter

The diesel particulate filter system removes harmful soot particulates from the exhaust gases.

### Automatic Cleaning Process


The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving without any notification.



The filter is cleaned by periodically burning off the soot particulates at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take up to 25 minutes. Typically it requires between 7 and 12 minutes.

Autostop is not available and fuel consumption may be higher during this period.

An odour and smoke may be given off during this process. This is normal.

### System Requires Cleaning Process


Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically. If cleaning of the filter is required and if previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, it will be indicated by illumination of  in the instrument cluster and a warning message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

-  illuminates along with a warning message when the diesel particulate filter is full. Start the cleaning process as soon as possible.
-  flashes along with a warning message when the diesel particulate filter has reached the maximum filling level. Start the cleaning process immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

### Activate Self-cleaning Process

To activate the cleaning process, continue driving and keep the engine speed above 2000 rpm. Shift down if necessary.


Diesel particulate filter cleaning is then started. The fastest cleaning is achieved at high engine speeds and loads.

 extinguishes as soon as the self-cleaning operation is complete. Keep driving until the self-cleaning operation is complete.

#### Caution

If possible, do not interrupt the cleaning process. Drive until cleaning is completed to avoid the need for service or repair.

### Cleaning Process Not Possible

If cleaning is not possible,  illuminates and a warning message appears in the DIC. Engine power may be reduced.

Seek the assistance of a dealer immediately.

# AdBlue

## AdBlue (Diesel)

### General Information

The selective catalytic reduction system is a method for substantially reducing nitrogen oxides in exhaust emissions. This is achieved by injecting a diesel exhaust fluid into the exhaust system. The fluid reacts with nitrous gases (NOx) from the exhaust and converts it to harmless nitrogen and water.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is commonly known as AdBlue®. It is a non-hazardous, non-flammable and colourless fluid.

 **Warning**

Avoid contact of AdBlue with your eyes or skin. In a case of eye or skin contact, rinse off with water.

### Caution

Avoid AdBlue contacting the paintwork. In case of contact, immediately rinse off with water.

You can purchase AdBlue and receive assistance with refilling from your dealer.

### AdBlue Tank

The AdBlue tank contains level switches which monitor the amount of remaining AdBlue fluid. The AdBlue tank capacity is 15 litres.

### Level Warnings

Depending on the calculated range of the AdBlue, different messages are displayed in the DIC. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

The first possible warning is **AdBlue Range: 2400 km**.

This warning will be displayed once briefly with the calculated range. Driving is possible without any restrictions, however refilling should be done when possible.

The next warning level is entered with a range below 1750 km. The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on and needs to be confirmed by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever or ✓ on the steering wheel. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 115.


The AdBlue tank should be refilled as soon as possible.

At an AdBlue range of 900 km, the following warning messages are alternately displayed in the DIC and cannot be dismissed:

- **AdBlue Low Refill Now**
- **Engine Restart Prevented in 900 km**

## 252 Driving and Operating

Furthermore, the estimated AdBlue range will continue to decrease from 900 km. The AdBlue tank should be refilled immediately to avoid engine restart prevention.


Additionally, the instrument cluster indicator  flashes continuously.

### Note

In case of high AdBlue consumption, the DIC may display this warning without the previous warning stages.

The last warning level is entered when the AdBlue tank is empty. Restarting the engine is not possible. The following warning messages are alternately displayed and cannot be dismissed:

- **AdBlue Empty Refill Now**
- **Engine Will Not Restart**

Additionally, instrument cluster indicator  illuminates continuously.

With active prevention of an engine start, the following message will be displayed: **Refill AdBlue To Start Vehicle**

The AdBlue tank must be refilled completely, otherwise restarting of the engine is not possible.

### Note

After refilling, it may take several minutes of driving for the DIC messages to reset.

### High Emission Warnings

If exhaust emissions rise above a certain value, warnings will be displayed in the DIC.

Have your vehicle checked by your dealer to avoid engine restart prevention.

These restrictions are a legal requirement.

## Refilling AdBlue



Never add AdBlue directly to the fuel tank.

If AdBlue is added to the fuel tank, do not drive the vehicle or start the engine. Contact your dealer immediately.

### Caution

Only use AdBlue that complies with ISO standard 22241-1.

Do not use additives or dilute AdBlue, otherwise the selective catalytic reduction system could be damaged.

Use only AdBlue containers with an adapter for refilling to prevent splash-back and overspill. AdBlue is available from reputable fuel and

automotive outlets, or from your dealer, who can also assist with refilling.

For the AdBlue tank capacity see *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ 387.

### Note

- It is not recommended to refill at the AdBlue pumps that exist at many fuel stations as they are for commercial vehicles (trucks and buses). The flow-rate will be too high and the nozzle may not fit your vehicle.
- Since AdBlue has a limited shelf-life; check the date of expiry before refilling.
- AdBlue freezes at a temperature of approx. -11 °C. Do not attempt to fill at temperatures below 0 °C.

The refilling of the AdBlue tank is only detected by the system when the liquid level switches in the tank are activated.

If the AdBlue refill is not successfully detected:

1. Continuously drive the vehicle for 10 minutes making sure the vehicle speed is always higher than 20 km/h.
2. If the AdBlue refill is detected successfully, the AdBlue level-driven messages and limitations will disappear.

If the AdBlue refill is still not detected once full, contact your dealer.

### Note

When removing the AdBlue filler cap, avoid inhalation of any odours.

The AdBlue tank filler neck is located behind the fuel filler door, which can only be opened when the vehicle is unlocked.

1. The vehicle must be parked on a level surface.
2. Turn the ignition off.
3. Close all doors to avoid odours entering the vehicle.
4. Release the fuel filler door by pushing the rear edge of the door.



5. Unscrew the AdBlue filler cap.
6. Open the AdBlue container.
7. Install the filler hose that came with the AdBlue container.
8. Lift the Adblue container and insert the filler hose into the AdBlue Filler port.
9. Raise the container until Adblue flows into your vehicle. Continue until the container is empty, or until the flow from the container has stopped. This can take several minutes.

- Place the container on the ground to empty the hose, wait 15 seconds.
- Unscrew the hose from the filler neck.
- Refit the AdBlue filler cap securely.

### Note

- Dispose of the AdBlue container and hose according to environmental requirements. The hose can be reused after flushing with clear water before the AdBlue dries out.
- It is recommended to store your AdBlue containers in a dry environment that is less than 30 °C and away from direct sunlight. It is not advisable, therefore, to store containers in your vehicle.

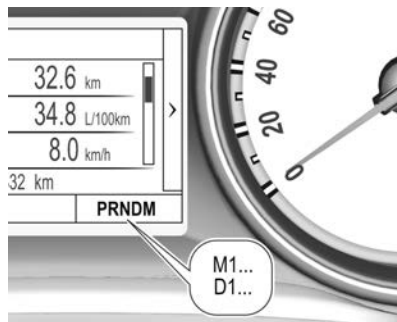
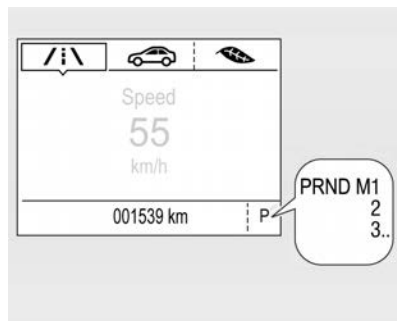
## Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission permits automatic gear shifting (automatic mode) or manual gear shifting (manual mode).

Manual shifting is possible in manual mode by tapping the shift lever to + or -, or if equipped, pulling the steering wheel paddles.

## Transmission Display

Depending on vehicle model, the mode or selected gear is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) as shown.



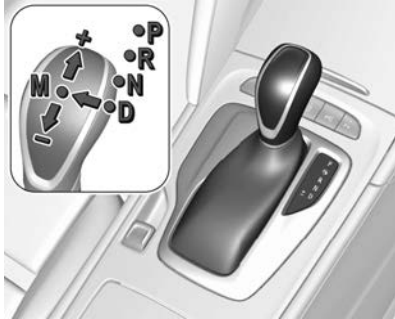
In automatic mode, the driving program is indicated by **D**.

In manual mode, **M** and the number of the selected gear is indicated.



- R** indicates reverse gear.
- N** indicates neutral position.
- P** indicates park position.

## Shift Lever



- P** : Park position. Wheels are locked. Engage only when the vehicle is stationary
- R** : Reverse gear. Engage only when the vehicle is stationary
- N** : Neutral
- D** : Automatic mode
- M** : Manual mode

- +** : Upshift in manual mode
- : Downshift in manual mode

### Caution

Selecting position **P** while the vehicle is still moving can cause damage to the transmission.

Do not press the accelerator pedal with the brakes applied in any gear except position **P** or **N**. This will overheat the transmission.



The shift lever is locked in **P** and can only be moved when the ignition is on, the release button on the shift lever is pushed and the brake pedal is applied.

Without the brake pedal applied, (P) illuminates. If the shift lever is not in **P** when the ignition is turned off, (P) flashes.

To engage **P** or **R**, press the release button.

The engine can only be started with lever in position **P** or **N**. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 244

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When a gear is engaged, the vehicle begins to creep when the brake pedal is released.

**Warning**

To prevent the vehicle from moving when position **N** is selected, always apply the park brake, press the foot brake or use suitable chocks to block the wheels.

Do not coast the vehicle in position **N** – this decreases your control and ability to accelerate quickly in an emergency.

**Caution**

Do not use the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle stationary on an uphill gradient. Use the brakes.

**Engine Braking**

To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear when driving downhill. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ 256.

**Rocking the Vehicle**

Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the shift lever between **D** and **R** in a repeated pattern.

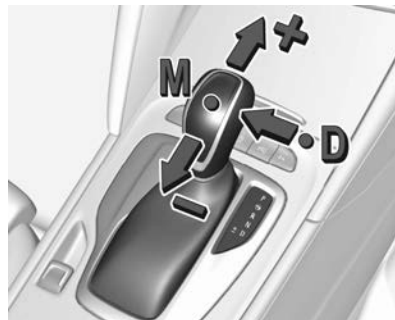
Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

**Parking**

Apply the parking brake and engage **P**. Ensure **(P)** is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

**Manual Mode**

**Shift Lever**



Move the shift lever out of position **D** towards the left into position **M**.

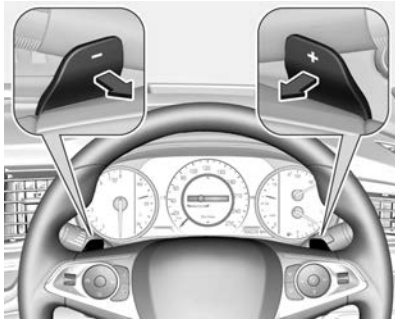
Manual mode **M** can be activated from position **D** in any driving situation and speed.

- Tap the shift lever upwards **+** to shift to a higher gear.
- Tap the shift lever downwards **-** to shift to a lower gear.

The selected gear is indicated in the instrument cluster.

## Steering Wheel Paddles

The vehicle may have steering wheel paddles.



Move the shift lever out of position **D** towards the left into position **M**.

Manual mode **M** can be activated from position **D** in any driving situation and speed.

Pull steering wheel paddles to select gears manually.

- Pull the right paddle **+** to shift to a higher gear.
- Pull the left paddle **-** to shift to a lower gear.

Multiple pulls allow gears to be skipped.

The selected gear is indicated in the instrument cluster.

## Temporary Manual Mode in Drive Mode D

Manual paddle shifting is also possible in automatic mode **D**. Upon completion of manual shifting operation, the transmission changes to automatic mode **D** after a defined time.

To interrupt manual mode and return to **D**, do one of the following:

- Press the **+** paddle until the system returns to **D** mode.
- Move the shift lever left into manual mode and then back to position **D**.

If the vehicle is at a standstill and the engine is idling, the transmission will remain in temporary manual mode. It changes to automatic mode when accelerator pedal is operated for a defined time and no paddle shifting is performed.

## General

If a higher gear is selected when the vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when the vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions, except when the kick-down function is activated.

## Gear Shift Indication

The symbol ▲ or ▼ with a number beside it is indicated when gear shifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

## Electronic Driving Programs

- Following a cold start, the operating temperature program increases engine speed to

quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature. Manual first gear selection may not be possible until normal operating temperature is reached.

- When SPORT mode is engaged, the vehicle may shift at higher engine speeds (unless cruise control is on). See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ 265.
- Special programs automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
- In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to manually select first, second or third gear for starting off.

### Kickdown

Pressing down the accelerator pedal beyond the kick-down detent will lead to maximum acceleration.

The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed and shifts to a higher gear at high engine revolutions.

### Overheat Protection

In the event of the transmission overheating due to high outside temperatures or sporty driving style, the torque and the maximum speed of the engine may be temporarily reduced.

### Fault

In the event of a transmission fault, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If a fault is detected, the electronic transmission control enables only one gear and the transmission will no longer shift automatically.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

### Interruption of Power Supply

In the event of an interruption to the power supply, the shift lever cannot be moved out of the **P** position.

If the vehicle battery is flat, start the vehicle using jump leads. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ 369.

If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, release the shift lever as follows.

1. Apply the parking brake.



2. Release the rear of the shift lever trim from the centre console.

Insert a finger into the leather pocket below the shift lever and lift the trim upwards.

Rotate the trim to the left.



3. Insert an object such as a pen or screwdriver into the opening near the shift lever.

Push down to disengage the locking mechanism and move the shift lever out of **P**.

If this position is engaged again, the shift lever will be locked again. Have the cause of the power supply interruption rectified by a dealer.

4. Place the shift lever trim into position on the centre console and refit.

## Drive Systems

### All-Wheel Drive

The all-wheel drive system enhances driving characteristics and stability, and helps to achieve optimum driveability.

The system is always active and cannot be deactivated. Engine torque is steplessly distributed between the front and rear wheels up to split of 50% / 50%.

Depending on driving conditions, e.g. steady driving, the all-wheel drive system transfers a minimum amount of torque for fuel efficiency.

Additionally, torque vectoring between the rear wheels is distributed automatically depending on vehicle dynamics and the road surface. This is due to the all-wheel drive system incorporating two clutches, one each side.

### Note

For optimum system performance, the vehicle's tyres should not have varying degrees of wear or be of different sizes.


If a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre, the system may have limited functionality, or be completely disabled. If disabled, the system operates in front-wheel drive mode. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Care is needed when towing an all-wheel drive vehicle. See *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ 371.

## Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is pressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this and the braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a dealer before continuing the journey.

When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit remains only for a few brake pedal applications. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. If a problem is detected,  illuminates in the instrument cluster.

## Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains controllable, even during hard braking.


### Warning


Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. You should always adjust the vehicle's speed to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process. For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.

### Warning

When the ignition is turned on, the  warning light briefly illuminates. The self-check of the ABS may be audible.

If the  warning light (ABS off) on the instrument panel display does not extinguish, or illuminates when driving, a malfunction has occurred.

**Note:** The vehicle's brake system remains operational, but without ABS assistance. Have a Holden Dealer check the system as soon as possible.

## Adaptive Brake Light

During full braking, all three brake lights flash for the duration of ABS control.

## Electric Parking Brake

The vehicle has an Electric Parking Brake (EPB).

Before turning the ignition off and leaving the vehicle, always check (P) is constantly illuminated in the instrument cluster.

### Applying When the Vehicle is Stationary



Press the brake pedal and pull the EPB switch for a minimum of one second until (P) illuminates

constantly and the parking brake is applied. The parking brake operates automatically with adequate force.

The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. Do not operate the EPB system too often without the engine running as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

#### Warning

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

### Releasing

Turn the ignition on. Keep the brake pedal pressed and then push the EPB switch.

### Drive Away Function

Selecting **D** (Drive) and then pressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake automatically.

This is not possible when the EPB switch is pulled at the same time.

## Dynamic Braking When the Vehicle is Moving

When the vehicle is moving and the EPB switch is kept pulled, the parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle, but will not apply statically.

As soon as the switch is released, dynamic braking will cease.

### Automatic Applying

If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control, when the adaptive cruise control is active the EPB is applied automatically when vehicle is stopped by the system for more than two minutes.

The parking brake releases automatically after moving off.

See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ 286.

### Functionality Check

When the vehicle is not moving, the EPB might be applied automatically. This is done to check the system.

### Fault

If (P) flashes, the EPB is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release the EPB and retry applying.

Failure mode of the EPB is indicated by (P) illuminating in the instrument cluster and by a message displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

- To apply the EPB: Pull and hold the switch for more than five seconds. If (P) illuminates, the parking brake is applied.
- To release the EPB: Push and hold the switch for more than two seconds. If (P) extinguishes, the parking brake is released.

### Brake Assist

If the brake pedal is pressed quickly and forcefully, maximum braking force is automatically applied.

Operation of the brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when pressing the brake pedal.

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.



#### Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

### Hill Start Assist (HSA)

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.

When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, the brakes remain on for a further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

Depending on vehicle model, the duration of the hill start assist can be changed. See "Extended Hill Start Assist" in *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.




## Ride Control Systems


### Traction Control System (TCS)

The Traction Control (TC) system is a component of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system.

TC improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the drive wheels from spinning.

As soon as the drive wheels start to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked separately. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

TC is operational after each engine start, as soon as  extinguishes in the instrument cluster.


When TC operates  flashes for as long as control is being applied.


#### Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.


#### Deactivation



TC can be switched off when spinning of the drive wheels is required: Press the  switch briefly.


 illuminates in the instrument cluster and a status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when TC is deactivated.

When TC is deactivated, ESC remains active but with a higher control threshold.

TC is reactivated by pressing the  switch again. A status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when TC is reactivated.

TC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

#### Fault

If there is a fault in the system  illuminates continuously and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.



### Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer or oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.

ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control (TC) system. It prevents the drive wheels from spinning.

Torque distribution is a special feature that allocates the torque to the drive wheels before the ESC intervenes. When cornering, the wheels on the inner curve are braked individually. Additionally, engine torque will be delivered to the drive wheel on the outer curve. This reduces the tendency of understeer and improves traction when cornering fast.

ESC is operational after each engine start, as soon as  extinguishes in the instrument cluster. When ESC operates  flashes.


#### Warning



Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.


### Deactivation







ESC and TC can be deactivated:

- Press and hold the  switch for a minimum of five seconds: TC and ESC are both deactivated.

 and  illuminate in the instrument cluster and messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

- To deactivate only the traction control, press the  switch briefly: TC is inactive but ESC remains active.




 illuminates in the instrument cluster and a status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

ESC is reactivated by pressing the  switch again. If the TC system was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated.  and  extinguish when TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.


### Competitive Mode

VXR models have an additional ESC competitive mode.

With TC and ESC on, press the  switch twice. If TC/ESC was previously off, reinstate it first. An ESC Competitive Mode message is displayed for a short period.  and  are illuminated to remind you that competitive mode is enabled.

Competitive mode allows performance driving whilst still maintaining control at a higher level.

### Fault

If there is a fault in the system  illuminates continuously and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

### Interactive Drive Control System

Depending on vehicle model, some or all of the following features may be available.

#### Flex Ride

The Flex Ride driving system allows the driver to select between three driving modes by pressing the centre console switches:

- SPORT mode: Press **SPORT**, the LED in the button illuminates.
- VXR mode: Press **VXR**, the LED in the button illuminates.

- AUTO mode: neither **SPORT** or **VXR** is pressed, no LED is illuminated.

In each driving mode, depending on vehicle model, Flex Ride adjusts the following electronic systems:

- Electronic damping control.
- Electronic power steering control.
- Automatic transmission.
- Adaptive cruise control.
- All-wheel drive.
- Engine sound enhancement.

### Sport Mode



Depending on vehicle model, the system settings are adjusted for a more dynamic driving style.

- Shock absorber damping is set up for increased handling and agility.
- Steering support is more direct.
- Automatic transmission shift points optimised for dynamic driving.
- Adaptive cruise control is adjusted.

- All-wheel drive supports active dynamic driving of the vehicle.
- Engine sound enhancement intensifies interior engine sound.

### VXR Mode



The Sport Mode system settings are adjusted for maximum performance.

### Auto Mode

All system settings are preset to standard values and optimised for daily driving (default mode).

This is a fully adaptive mode, adjusting systems to both comfort and sport settings depending on driving style and driving situation.

### Adaptive Drive Mode Control


Within each manually selected driving mode; Sport, VXR or Auto, Drive Mode Control (DMC) detects and analyses the driving situation and the driver's driving style continuously. If necessary, DMC automatically adjusts damping and steering for the duration of the occurring situation.

If, for example, normal settings are active in Auto mode and DMC detects a sporty driving behaviour, it automatically changes the systems to Sport settings unless the driver deselects Sport mode damping or steering in the Sport Mode Customisation menu.

When the driving characteristic or the dynamic vehicle state returns to the former state, DMC will change to preselected settings.


## Flex Ride Visualisation Menu



A Flex Ride visualisation menu can be displayed on the infotainment screen by touching . In this screen the selected drive mode and active setup are displayed.

System settings are highlighted in red for sport and yellow for normal. Additionally the personalisation of Sport Mode and Auto-Mode, functions can be displayed touching the button on the infotainment display.

## Sport Mode Customisation

Touch  on the infotainment system display. Select **Sport Mode Customisation** and select the relevant settings.

### Note


Depending on vehicle model, not all settings may be available.

- Sport Steering.
- Sport Suspension.
- Sport AWD.
- Sport Adaptive Cruise Control.

The settings can also be changed in the Settings menu.

See *Settings* ⇨ 170 or *Settings* ⇨ 229.

## Auto-Mode Customisation

Touch  on the infotainment system display. Select **Auto-Mode Customisation** and select the relevant settings.

## Note

Depending on vehicle model, not all settings may be available.

- Normal: Default setting.
- Sport Sensitive: Systems change to sport settings faster while driving sporty.
- Auto Adjustment Off: Drive mode control adaptation is deactivated.

The settings can also be changed in the Settings menu.

See *Settings* ⇨ 170 or *Settings* ⇨ 229.

## Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, reversing, and parking. Please read this entire section to gain a full understanding of their capabilities and limitations before using these systems.

### **Warning**

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

(Continued)

### **Warning (Continued)**

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.
- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.
- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.
- Work if the detection sensor is covered, such as with a sticker, magnet, etc.
- Work if the area surrounding the detection sensor is damaged or not properly repaired.

(Continued)

### **Warning (Continued)**

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

## Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

The rear vision camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle on the infotainment system display.

### **Warning**

Never rely solely on the rear vision camera when reversing the vehicle.

There is a blind spot that cannot be sensed by the camera.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

The rear vision camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention to the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

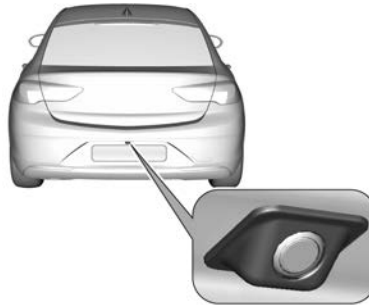
Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the camera (rear number plate surround), it may become misaligned. Contact a Holden Dealer.

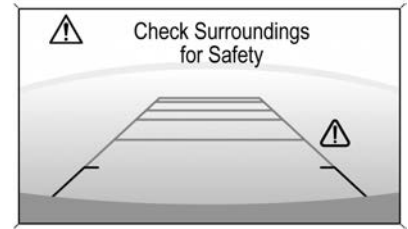
Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

**Activation**

The rear vision camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

**Functionality**

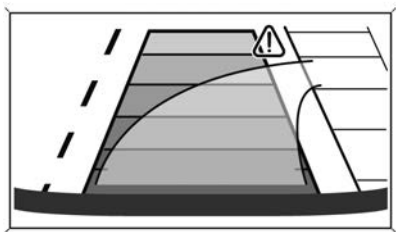
The camera is mounted between the rear number plate lights.



The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.


**Guide Lines**


Dynamic guide lines are horizontal lines at one metre intervals projected onto the display to define the distance to displayed objects.



The trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

### Warning Symbols

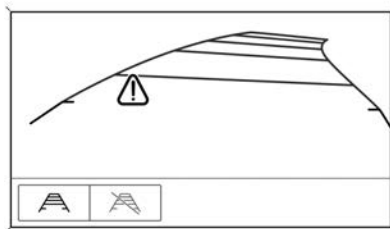
Warning symbols  are indicated on the display which show obstacles detected by the rear parking assist sensors.

Additionally  appears on the top line of the display with the warning to check the area surrounding the vehicle.

### Deactivation

The camera is switched off when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is not engaged for approx. 10 seconds. The infotainment system display returns to the previous screen.

### Deactivation of Guide Lines and Warning Symbols



### LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police)

Activation or deactivation of the visual guide lines and the warning symbols can be changed via the touch buttons in the lower area of the display.

### Except LT, RS, Calais Tourer (Police)

Activation or deactivation of the visual guide lines and the warning symbols can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. See *Settings* ⇨ 229.


### System Limitations

The rear vision camera may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or headlight beams is/ are shining directly into the camera lens.
- When driving at night.
- The weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The camera lens is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lens, rinse with water, and wipe with a soft cloth.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle has had a rear end collision.

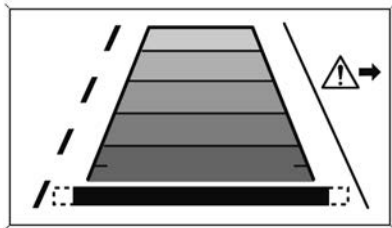



- There are extreme temperature changes.

Fault messages are displayed with  on the top line of the infotainment system display.

### Rear Cross Traffic Alert

Additional to the rear vision camera, rear cross traffic alert warns of cross traffic from left or right side when reversing.



When cross traffic is recognised and the rear vision camera is activated, a warning triangle  with a direction arrow is displayed,

showing the direction of the traffic. Furthermore, three beeps will sound from the speaker on that side.

The radar distance sensors are located behind each side of the rear bumper.

### Warning

Rear cross traffic alert does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.

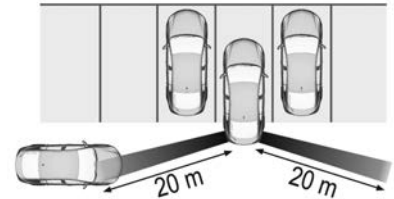
Pedestrians, children or animals are not detected.

Do not reverse the vehicle by only looking at the infotainment system display. Always check the surrounding area behind and around the vehicle before reversing.

### Activation

Rear cross traffic alert is automatically activated together with the rear vision camera when reverse gear is engaged.

### Detection Zones



The system sensors cover a zone of approx. 20 metres at 90° to the left or right side behind the vehicle. Rear cross traffic alert is active at up to 10 km/h and issues alerts within cross traffic travelling between 0 and 36 km/h.

### Deactivation

Rear cross traffic alert is deactivated together with the rear vision camera when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is not engaged for approx. 10 seconds.

The rear cross traffic alert can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

The system is also deactivated if the vehicle is towing a trailer. Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre.

### System Limitations

The system may not operate properly when:

- Ice, snow, mud, stickers, magnets, metal plates, or anything else covers the sensors.
- Driving in heavy rainstorms.

- The vehicle has had a collision or if the area surrounding the detection sensor is damaged or not correctly repaired.
- There are extreme temperature changes.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

### Surround Vision System

The surround vision system allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a near 360° image – like a bird's eye view – in the infotainment system display.

The system uses four cameras:

- Rear camera, installed in the tailgate.
- Front camera, installed in the radiator grille below the emblem.

- Two side cameras, each located beneath an exterior mirror.




The image in the infotainment system display is divided into two parts: On the right is a view from above the vehicle, and on the left is the view from the front or rear, according to the gear selected or the touchscreen buttons along the lower area of the display.

The parking sensors complete the information on the view.

## Activation

The surround vision system is activated by:

- Engaging reverse gear.
- Touching the camera icon  on the infotainment display.

## Note


It may be on the second home screen page; swipe to the left or right.

- Approaching too close to an object ahead.

## Functionality

### Rear View

Rear view displays an image of the area behind the vehicle on the left-hand part of the display when reverse gear is engaged.

A warning triangle  may be displayed when obstacles are detected by the rear parking assist sensors. This triangle changes from yellow to red and increases in size the closer the object becomes.

Dynamic guide lines can also be displayed or turned off in the lower area of the display. The horizontal lines are at one metre intervals projected onto the display to define the distance to displayed objects. The trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

The previous content of the infotainment display returns when the shift lever is moved out of reverse after a short delay. To return to the previous display content sooner, press the camera icon in the display.

Driving faster than 11 km/h in a forward gear will deactivate the system.

### Surround View

Surround view displays an image of the area surrounding the vehicle from above, along with the front or rear camera views.

## Front View

Front view displays an image of the area in front of the vehicle on the left-hand part of the display. The view is shown after shifting from reverse gear to a forward gear, or by touching the camera icon in the display.

Front view also displays objects automatically detected within 30 cm. Front view is only displayed up to a speed of 11 km/h in a forward gear.

## Deactivation

The system is deactivated:

- When driving faster than 11 km/h.
- Pressing the Home button.
- Shifting into **N** (Neutral) or **P** (Park).

### General Information

#### Warning

The surround vision system does not replace driver vision or attention. It will not display children, pedestrians, cyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other objects outside of the camera view areas, e. g. below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle.

Do not drive or park the vehicle using only the surround vision system.

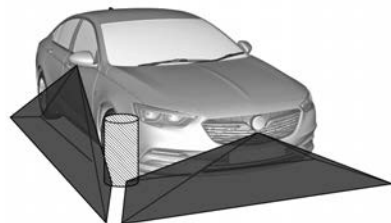
Always check the surroundings of the vehicle before driving.

#### Warning

Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either edge of the bumper or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen.

#### Warning

The surround vision system cameras have blind spot areas and will not display all objects near the edges of the vehicle. Folding side mirrors that are out of position will not display the panoramic view correctly.



Blind spots are represented as hatched areas in the illustrations. The areas displayed by the system are shown shaded.

## System Limitations

### Caution

For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lenses of the cameras in the front radiator grille, the housings of the outside mirrors and in the tailgate between the number plate lights always clean.

Rinse the lenses with water and wipe with a soft cloth. Do not clean the lenses with a steam or high-pressure cleaner.

The surround vision system may not operate correctly when:

- The surroundings are dark.
- The sun or headlight beams shine directly into the camera lenses.
- When driving at night.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.

- The camera lenses are covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle is damaged following a collision.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

## Parking Assist

### Front-rear Parking Assist

#### Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area when reversing or driving forward while using parking assist system.

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indications.

Two different acoustic warning signals are sounded for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.



The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors each in the rear and front bumper.

### Activation

The system is activated automatically at a speed up to 11 km/h.



An illuminated LED in the parking assist button **P**▲ indicates the system is ready to operate. If **P**▲ is switched off within an ignition cycle, the front parking assist is deactivated. If vehicle speed has exceeded 25 km/h beforehand, parking assist will be reactivated when speed drops below 11 km/h.

When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

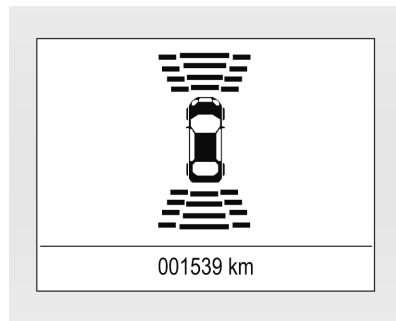
### Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles in front of the vehicle within a distance of up to 80 cm and behind the vehicle within a distance of up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, or up to 1.5 m while reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to the obstacle, the acoustic warning signals sound in the vehicle on that side.

The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle moves closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the DIC or, depending on model, in the infotainment system display.



The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message, distance indication appears again.

The acoustic signal is muted when the parking brake is engaged or the shift lever is in **N** (Neutral).

### Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when vehicle speed exceeds 11 km/h. Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing the parking assist button **P**▲.

When the system is deactivated manually, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message is displayed in the DIC.

After a manual deactivation, the front-rear parking assist is activated again if **P** with a triangle symbol is pressed or if reverse gear is engaged.

The system can be deactivated in the Vehicle Personalisation menu. It remains deactivated during the ignition cycle or until reactivated.

Adjustment may be available if a towbar is fitted.

See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

### Notes on the Parking Assist System

#### **Warning**

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing, as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

(Continued)

#### **Warning (Continued)**

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the vehicle.

#### **Caution**

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading of the vehicle.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity, e.g. off-road vehicles or trucks, etc. Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

(Continued)

#### **Caution (Continued)**

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

A sensor may detect a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments; sporadic false warnings may occur.

Make sure the front number plate is correctly mounted, not bent and there are no gaps to the bumper fascia on either side. Also ensure the front and rear bumper fascias are not damaged.

#### **Towing**

When attaching a trailer or bike carrier, etc., with an electrical connection, the parking assist may be deactivated.

A message may be displayed advising this once the vehicle speed has exceeded 75 km/h and then returned to below 11 km/h.

### Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, a message is displayed in the DIC.

### Advanced Parking Assist

The advanced parking assist system measures a suitable parking spot while passing, calculates the trajectory and automatically steers the vehicle into a parallel or perpendicular parking spot.

Instructions are given in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) or depending on model, in the infotainment system display. Instructions are supported by acoustic signals. The driver must control acceleration and gear shifting, while braking and steering is done automatically.

### Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for accepting the parking spot suggested by the system and the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area in all directions when using the advanced parking assist.




Advanced parking assist is combined with the front-rear parking assist. Both systems use the same sensors in the front and rear bumpers, however vehicles with

advanced parking assist have six ultrasonic parking sensors in each bumper.

### Activation

Advanced parking assist can only be activated when driving forwards.



When searching for a parking spot, the system is ready to operate with a short press of . The system detects ten metres for parallel parking spots or six metres for perpendicular parking spots when in advanced parking assist mode.

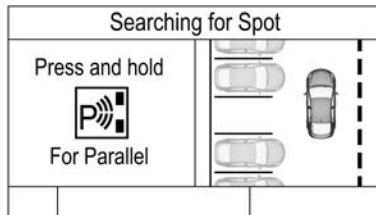



The system can only be activated at a speed up to 30 km/h and the system searches for a parking spot at a speed up to 30 km/h.

The maximum allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is 1.8 metres for parallel parking and 2.5 metres for perpendicular parking.

### Parking Spot Search Mode

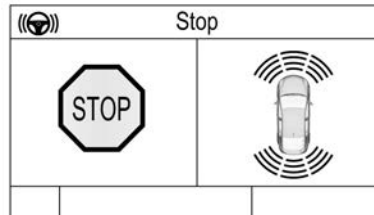
#### Indication in the Driver Information Centre



When activated, the system will search for a perpendicular parking spot by default. To search for a parallel spot, press and hold **P** .

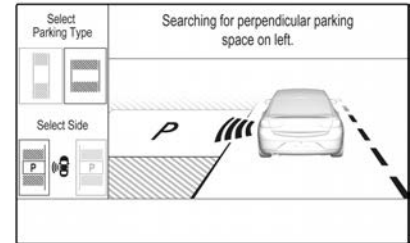
The system is configured to detect parking spots by default on the passenger side.

To detect parking spots on the driver's side, operate the turn signal lever to the driver's side.



When a spot is detected, a visual feedback in the DIC and an acoustic signal is given.

#### Indication in the Infotainment System Display



Select parallel or perpendicular parking spot by touching the button on the display.

Select the parking side by touching the button on the display or operating the turn signal lever to the desired side.

When a spot is detected, a visual feedback on the infotainment system display and an acoustic signal is given.

Regardless of the indication method, if the driver does not stop the vehicle after a parking spot is proposed, the system commences a new search for another suitable parking spot.

### Park Guiding Mode

The parking spot suggestion of the system is accepted when the vehicle is stopped by the driver within ten metres for parallel parking spots or six metres for perpendicular parking spots, after the STOP message is given.

The system calculates the optimal path into the parking spot.

A brief vibration in the steering wheel after engaging reverse gear indicates the steering is controlled by the system.

The vehicle is steered into the spot automatically by providing the driver detailed instructions for accelerating and shifting forward or reversing. The driver must keep hands away from the steering wheel.

During park guiding mode, the manoeuvring speed is limited. Always pay attention to the sound of the front-rear parking assist. A continuous sound indicates the distance to an obstacle is less than approx. 30 cm.

If, for any reason, the driver must take over control of the steering, hold the steering wheel only at the outer edge. Automatic steering is cancelled in this event.

### Display Indication

The instructions on the display show:

- General hints and warning messages.
- Advice to reduce speed if driving faster than 30 km/h during parking spot searching mode.
- The command to stop the vehicle when a parking spot is detected.
- The direction of driving during the parking manoeuvre.

- The commands to shift into **R** or **D**.
- The command to stop or to drive slowly.
- For some instructions a progress bar is shown in the DIC.
- The successful completion of the parking manoeuvre indicated by a message symbol and a chime.
- The cancelling of a parking manoeuvre.

### Display Priorities

Advanced parking assist indication in the Driver Information Centre can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority.

After approving the message by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever or ✓ on the steering wheel, depending on the model, advanced parking assist instructions appear again and the parking manoeuvre can be continued.

## Deactivation

The system is deactivated by:

- A short press of P<sup>□</sup>.
- Parking manoeuvre successfully ended.
- Driving faster than 30 km/h during a parking spot search.
- Driving faster than 8 km/h during a parking guidance.
- Driver interference on the steering wheel detected.
- Exceeding the maximum number of gear changes: eight cycles when parallel parking or five cycles when perpendicular parking.
- Turning the ignition off.

Deactivation by the driver or by the system during manoeuvring will be indicated by a message being displayed. Additionally, an acoustic signal sounds.

## Fault

A message is displayed when:

- There is a fault in the system.
- The driver did not successfully complete the parking manoeuvre.
- The system is not operational.
- Any of the deactivation reasons described above apply.

If an object is detected during parking instructions, STOP is indicated on the display. Removing the object will resume the parking manoeuvre. If the object is not removed, the system will be deactivated. A long press of P<sup>□</sup> will activate the system and search for a new parking spot.

## Notes on the Parking Assist System

### Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing, as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the vehicle.

### Caution

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading of the vehicle.

(Continued)

### Caution (Continued)

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity, e.g. off-road vehicles or trucks, etc. Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

A sensor may detect a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments; sporadic false warnings may occur.

Make sure the front number plate is correctly mounted, not bent and there are no gaps to the bumper

fascia on either side. Also ensure the front and rear bumper fascias are not damaged.

The advanced parking assist system may not respond to changes in the available parking space after initiating a parking manoeuvre.

The system may recognise an entry, a gateway, a courtyard or even a crossing as a parking spot.

After selecting reverse gear the system will start a parking manoeuvre. Take care regarding the availability of the suggested parking spot.

Low curbs and surface irregularities are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

### Note

New vehicles require a calibration during first use. For optimal parking guidance, a driving distance of at least 10 km, including a number of bends, is required.

The system is calibrated for factory-fitted wheels. Parking performance is altered with other tyre or wheel sizes.

### Cruise Control

The cruise control system can store and maintain speeds from approx. 40 km/h to the maximum vehicle speed.

Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with local posted speed limits. Activating in first gear is not possible.





### Warning

Do not use the cruise control when road or driving conditions require varying speeds. A constant speed is not practical in heavy or varying traffic or on winding, slippery or rough roads.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Remember that when  illuminates green, the cruise control is maintaining the vehicle's speed. Taking your foot off the accelerator pedal does not reduce the speed. To deactivate the cruise control, press the brake pedal or push .


The cruise control does not apply the vehicle's brakes. The vehicle may gain speed when going down steep hills.

When climbing steep hills (particularly when towing), the vehicle may lose speed. In this case, use the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal when the speed returns to the set speed.

The cruise control is cancelled if Traction Control (TC) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**


becomes active, indicated by  flashing on the instrument panel display.

**Switching On**

The cruise control switches are located on the steering wheel and vary depending on vehicle model. Operation is the same.

Press  on the steering wheel.  illuminates white in the instrument cluster.

**Activation**

Accelerate to the desired speed above 40 km/h and turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained.  illuminates green in

## 284 Driving and Operating

the instrument cluster. On some models the set speed is also indicated.

The accelerator pedal can be released.

Vehicle speed can be temporarily increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Cruise control remains activated while shifting gears.

### Increase Speed





With cruise control active, hold the steering wheel thumb wheel turned to **RES/+** or briefly turn to **RES/+** repeatedly. Vehicle speed increases continuously or in small increments.

Alternatively, accelerate to the desired speed and store by turning to **SET/-**.

### Reduce Speed

With cruise control active, hold the steering wheel thumb wheel turned to **SET/-** or briefly turn to **SET/-** repeatedly. Vehicle speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

### Deactivation

Press  on the steering wheel.  illuminates white in the instrument cluster.

The cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. The last stored speed remains in memory.

### Automatic Deactivation




The cruise control may automatically deactivate when:

- Vehicle speed is below approx. 40 km/h.
- Vehicle speed drops more than 25 km/h below the set speed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The shift lever is in N.
- Engine speed is in a very low range.
- The Traction Control (TC) system or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is operating.
- The parking brake is applied.
- Simultaneously pressing **RES/+** and the brake pedal deactivates the cruise control and will delete the stored speed.

### Resume Stored Speed

If the cruise control system has not been turned off since it was last set, turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 30 km/h. The stored speed will be returned.

## Switching Off

Press  on the steering wheel.  extinguishes in the instrument cluster. The stored speed is deleted. Pressing  on the steering wheel to activate the speed limiter, or turning the ignition off also switches the cruise control off and deletes the stored speed.

## Speed Limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.



Maximum speed can be set at speeds above 25 km/h. The driver can only accelerate up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.


The preset speed limit is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) when the system is active.

## Activation





The speed limiter switches are located on the steering wheel and vary depending on vehicle model. Operation is the same.

Press  on the steering wheel.  illuminates in the DIC.

If cruise control has been activated previously, it is switched off when the speed limiter is activated and  extinguishes.

## Set Limited Speed

Accelerate to the desired speed and briefly turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored as the vehicle maximum speed. Depending on vehicle model,  and the speed limit is displayed, or  changes to green.

## Change Limited Speed

With the speed limiter active, hold or briefly turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **RES/+** to increase, or **SET/-** to decrease the desired maximum speed.


### Exceeding Limited Speed


When exceeding the limited speed without driver input, the speed will flash in the DIC and a chime sounds during this period.

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly to near fully pressed. In this case no chime appears.

Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

### Deactivation

Press  on the steering wheel. The speed limiter is deactivated and the vehicle can be driven without speed limit.

Depending on vehicle model the stored limited speed is indicated in brackets or  changes to white.


Additionally, a corresponding message is displayed. The speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off and the last stored speed remains in memory.


### Resume Limited Speed

Turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **RES/+**.

The stored speed limit will be obtained and is indicated without brackets in the DIC.

### Switching Off

Press  on the steering wheel. The speed limit indication extinguishes in the DIC and the stored speed is deleted.

By pressing  on the steering wheel to activate cruise control or adaptive cruise control, the speed limiter is also deactivated and the stored speed is deleted.

Turning the ignition off also deactivates the speed limiter, but the speed limit will be stored for next speed limiter activation.

### Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive cruise control is an enhancement to conventional cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a following distance behind a detected vehicle and slowing your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

When the vehicle ahead accelerates after a brief stop, the adaptive cruise control will drive off automatically without driver action. If necessary, press **RES/+** or press the accelerator pedal to resume adaptive cruise control.

It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance.


Pressing the accelerator pedal allows more control over the acceleration after driving off.

#### Note

Automatic braking is disabled during usage of the accelerator pedal.

If the stopped vehicle ahead stands for a longer time and then begins to move forward, the green illuminated



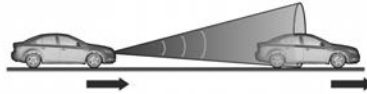
vehicle ahead indicator  will flash and a warning chime will sound as a reminder to check the traffic before resuming.

### Warning

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can start moving. Always be prepared to manually apply the brake pedal to hold the vehicle stationary.

Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by the adaptive cruise control. Always move the shift lever to P (Park) and turn the ignition off before leaving the vehicle.

To facilitate overtaking a vehicle on a freeway, the activation of a turn signal reduces the following distance for a short time. This function is implemented only on the driver's side.



Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a conventional cruise control.

Adaptive cruise control is designed to be used on long straight roads such as highways or country roads with steady traffic. Do not use the system if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

### Warning

Complete driver attention is always required while driving with adaptive cruise control.



(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

The driver remains fully in control of the vehicle because the brake pedal, the accelerator pedal and the cancel switch have priority over any adaptive cruise control operation.

### Switching On



Press  on the steering wheel to switch on adaptive cruise control.  is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

### Activation by Setting the Speed

Adaptive cruise control can be activated at speeds above 40 km/h. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with local posted speed limits.

Accelerate to the desired speed and turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained.



The adaptive cruise control symbol, the following distance setting and the set speed are indicated in the DIC. The accelerator pedal can be released.


Adaptive cruise control remains activated during gear shifting.

### Overriding Set Speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the selected set speed by pressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the desired distance if a slower vehicle is ahead. Otherwise it returns to the stored speed.

Once the system is activated, adaptive cruise control decelerates or brakes if it detects a vehicle ahead which is slower or closer than the desired following distance.

#### Warning

The system temporarily deactivates automatic braking when the set speed is overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal. This is indicated as a warning in the Driver Information Centre or by  turning blue.

### Take Over Current Speed

If the accelerator pedal is pressed, the current vehicle speed is taken over as the stored speed. This is also valid if the current vehicle speed is lower than the set speed.

### Increase Speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold **RES/+** to increase speed continuously. Push **RES/+** repeatedly to increase speed in small increments.

### Reduce Speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold **SET/-** to decrease speed continuously. Push **SET/-** repeatedly to decrease speed in small increments.

### Resume Stored Speed


If the system is switched on but inactive and a speed was stored before, turn the thumb wheel on the steering wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 5 km/h to resume the stored speed.


## Setting the Following Distance

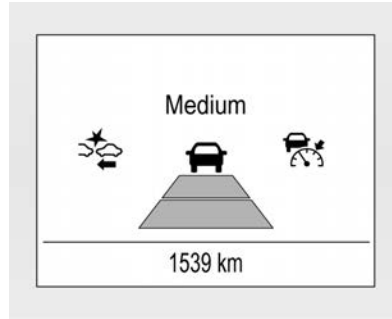
When adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.

The following distance can be set to near, medium or far.



Press  on the steering wheel. The current setting is shown in the DIC.

Press  again repeatedly to change the following distance. The setting is also displayed in the DIC.



The selected following distance is indicated by filled distance bars in the adaptive cruise control page.

### Note

The following distance setting is shared with the sensitivity setting of Forward Collision Alert. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ 293.

Example: If the far setting is selected, then the driver is warned sooner before a possible collision.

## Warning


The Driver accepts full responsibility to drive with the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather, visibility and traffic regulations.

The following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off if required by the prevailing conditions.

## Adaptive Cruise Control in Sport Mode

On vehicles with Flex Ride driving modes, the driver can slightly increase the adaptive cruise control acceleration when Sport mode is selected. This function can be deactivated in the Flex Ride visualisation menu. See *Interactive Drive Control System* ⇨ 265.

## Detecting the Vehicle Ahead


The green illuminated vehicle ahead indicator  is displayed when the system detects a vehicle in the

driving path. The range of the sensors is between 25 and 150 metres depending on vehicle speed.

If this symbol does not display, or displays briefly, the adaptive cruise control will not respond to vehicles ahead.

### Deactivation

Adaptive cruise control is deactivated by the driver when:


-  on the steering wheel is pressed.
- The brake pedal is applied.
- The shift lever is moved to **N** (Neutral).


The system is also automatically deactivated when:

- Vehicle speed is above 190 km/h or slows to a stop without deactivating within five minutes.
- The Traction Control (TC) system is deactivated or the system is operating.

- The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is deactivated or the system is operating.
- There is no traffic and nothing detected on the road sides for approx. one minute. In this case there are no radar echoes and the sensor may report that it is blocked.
- The active emergency braking system is applying the brakes.
- Driving on steep inclines.
- The radar sensor is blocked by an ice or water film.
- A fault is detected in the radar, camera, engine or brake system.
- The brakes need to cool down.
- The incline uphill or downhill is greater than 20%.
- The electric parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is being held to a stop by the system for more than five minutes.

- The vehicle stops, the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened.



When adaptive cruise control is deactivated,  changes from green to white and a message is displayed in the DIC. The stored speed is maintained.

Depending on model, the stored speed is indicated in brackets in the DIC or  changes from green to white when the system is deactivated but not switched off.

### Warning

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the driver must take over full braking and engine control immediately.

### Switching Off

Press  on the steering wheel to switch off the adaptive cruise control.  extinguishes in the DIC and the stored speed is deleted.

Turning the ignition off also switches off the adaptive cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

### Driver's Attention

- Use adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and needs time to detect it again.
- Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tyre traction (wheel spinning), resulting in loss of control of the vehicle.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or on dirt roads, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or suppresses completely the visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.

### System Limitations

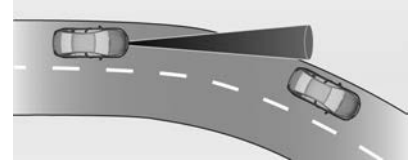
#### Warning

The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking. Therefore the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.

- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. If a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.
- Adaptive cruise control does ignore the oncoming traffic.
- Adaptive cruise control does not consider pedestrians and animals for braking and driving off.
- Adaptive cruise control considers stopped vehicles only at low speed.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer.


- Do not use adaptive cruise control on roads with an incline of more than 10%.

### Bends



The adaptive cruise control calculates a predicted path based on centrifugal force. This predicted path considers the current bend characteristic, but cannot consider a future bend change.

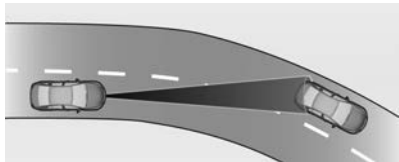
The system may lose the current vehicle ahead or consider a vehicle which is not in the actual lane. This can happen when entering or exiting a bend or if the bend gets tighter or wider.

The camera applies a certain correction based on the detectable lane markings.  will extinguish if a vehicle ahead is no longer detected.

## 292 Driving and Operating

If the centrifugal force is too high in a bend, the system slows the vehicle slightly. This braking level is not designed to avoid spinning off the bend.

The driver is responsible for reducing the selected speed before entering a bend and in general to adapt the speed to the road type and to existing speed limits.



### Freeways

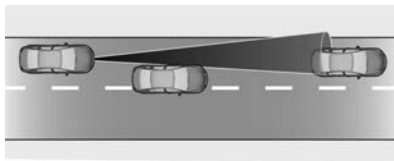
On freeways, adapt the set speed to the situation and the weather. Always consider that adaptive cruise control has a limited visibility range, a limited braking level and a certain reaction time to verify if a vehicle is on the driving path or not.

Furthermore, adaptive cruise control was designed to brake as late as possible to allow changing the lane

before the automatic braking. Adaptive cruise control may not be able to brake the vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a much slower vehicle or after a lane change. This is particularly true while driving fast or if the visibility is reduced due to weather conditions.

While entering or exiting a freeway, adaptive cruise control may lose the vehicle ahead and accelerate up to the set speed. For this reason, decrease the set speed before the exit or before the entry.

### Vehicle Path Change



If another vehicle enters your driving path, adaptive cruise control will first consider the vehicle when it is completely in your path. Be ready to

take action and press the brake pedal, if you need to brake more quickly.

### Hill Considerations



**Warning**

Do not use adaptive cruise control on roads with steep hills.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills.

Adaptive control is deactivated automatically if the vehicle slows uphill on an incline greater than 10%. In this condition, be prepared to take control of the vehicle.

**Note**

Applying the brakes deactivates the system.

**Radar Unit**

The radar unit is mounted behind the radiator grille below the brand emblem.

 **Warning**

The radar unit was aligned carefully during vehicle manufacture. Therefore, in the  
(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

event of a front-end impact the alignment may be compromised. Do not use the system.

The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the radar unit behind can be out of position and react incorrectly. After an accident, consult a dealer to verify and adjust the radar unit position.

**Settings**

Adaptive cruise control settings can be changed in the vehicle personalisation menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

**Fault**


If the adaptive cruise control does not operate due to temporary conditions, e.g. blockage by ice, overheated brakes or low speed manoeuvres, etc., or if there is a

permanent system error, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

**Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System**

Forward collision alert may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end collisions.

If the vehicle is equipped with conventional cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a vehicle in your path directly ahead. If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the radar sensor and front camera to detect a vehicle in your path directly ahead.

A detected vehicle ahead is indicated by the vehicle ahead indicator . If a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly, a warning chime and alert in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) is provided. Additionally the driver is notified by a flashing red LED stripe or a pop up symbol in the head-up

## 294 Driving and Operating



display which is projected on to the windscreen in the driver's field of view.


A precondition is that forward collision alert is not deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

### Activation

- Forward collision alert with the front camera detects vehicles up to distances of approx. 60 metres and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.
- Forward collision alert with the radar sensor detects vehicles up to distances of approx. 150 metres and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.

### Alerting the Driver

 illuminates green in the instrument cluster when the system has detected a vehicle in the driving path. On vehicles with head-up display,  is projected on to the windscreen.

 changes to yellow when the distance to a preceding moving vehicle becomes small.

### Warning

FCA is a warning system only and does not apply the brakes.

When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all.

The FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

The driver bears full responsibility for maintaining safe following distance according to applicable traffic rules, weather and road conditions, etc. at all times.



When the time to a potential collision with a preceding vehicle becomes too small and a collision is imminent, a collision alert symbol is displayed in the DIC.



The driver is also notified by a flashing red LED stripe or a pop-up symbol in the head-up display which is projected on to the windscreen in




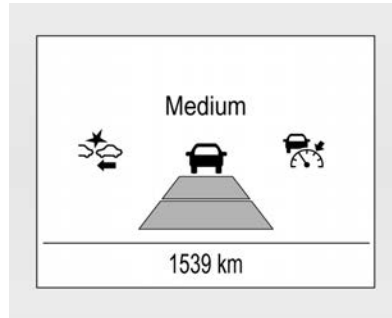
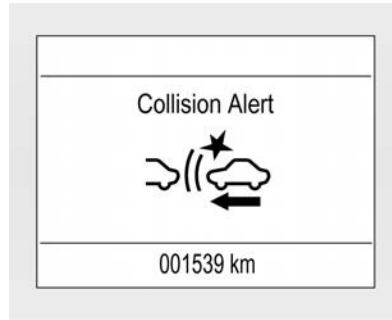
the driver's field of view. Simultaneously a warning chime sounds.

Press the brake pedal and steer the vehicle as required by the situation.

### Selecting Alert Sensitivity



Press  on the steering wheel to set the alert sensitivity to near, medium or far.



The first button press displays the current setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will

change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed.

The alert timing will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing.

#### Note

The alert timing sensitivity setting is shared with the following distance setting of the adaptive cruise control, if equipped. Changing the alert timing sensitivity changes the adaptive cruise control following distance setting.

#### Deactivation

The system can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

If the forward collision alert was deactivated, alert sensitivity is set to Medium when the ignition is next turned on. The last selected setting will be stored when the ignition is switched off.

### System Limitations

Forward collision alert is designed to provide a warning for vehicles only, but may react also to other objects.

In the following cases, forward collision alert may not detect a vehicle ahead or sensor performance may be limited:

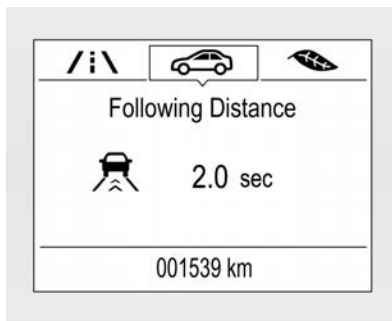
- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- During night-time driving.
- Where the weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The windscreen sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or is affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.



### Following Distance Indication System

The following distance indication displays the distance to a preceding moving vehicle.


The front camera in the windscreen is used to detect the distance of a vehicle directly ahead in the vehicle's path. It is active at speeds above 40 km/h.

When a preceding vehicle is detected ahead, the distance is indicated in seconds and displayed on a page in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).



- For LT, RS and Calais Tourer (Police): Select the Vehicle Information  menu using the MENU button  on the turn signal

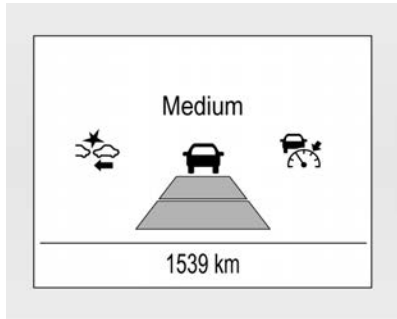
lever. Turn the adjuster wheel to choose Following Distance page.

- For vehicles except LT, RS and Calais Tourer (Police): Select the Info menu using the steering wheel buttons and press  to scroll down to the Following Distance page.

For further information on using the DIC menus see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 115.

The minimum indicated distance is 0.5 seconds.

If there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is out of range, two dashes will be displayed: -- sec.



If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control and it is active, this page shows the alert sensitivity setting instead of following distance setting.

### System Limitations

In the following cases, following distance indication sensor performance is limited:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- During night-time driving.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.

- The sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.

### Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) can help reduce damage and injury from collisions with vehicles, pedestrians and obstacles detected directly ahead, when a collision can no longer be avoided either by manual braking or by steering.

Before AEB applies, the driver is warned by the forward collision alert or the front pedestrian braking systems.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ 293 or *Front Pedestrian Protection System* ⇨ 300.

AEB uses various inputs, such as a camera sensor, radar unit, brake pressure and vehicle speed, to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

### Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver's responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. Its function is limited to supplemental use only to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision.

The system may not react to animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

### Functionality

If equipped only with the front camera, AEB operates in a forward gear above walking speed up to approx. 80 km/h.

For vehicles with a radar unit, AEB operates in a forward gear above walking speed at all speeds.

A precondition is that forward collision alert with the front camera system is not deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

The system includes:

- Brake preparation system.
- Emergency automatic braking.
- Forward looking brake assist.
- Intelligent brake assist (only with radar unit).
- Front pedestrian braking system.

### Brake Preparation System


When approaching a vehicle ahead or a pedestrian so quickly that a collision is likely, the brake preparation system slightly pressurises the brakes. This reduces the response time, when manual or automatic braking is requested.


The brake system is prepared so that braking can occur rapidly. If equipped only with front camera the system operates up to a speed of approx. 80 km/h.

### Emergency Automatic Braking

After activation of brake preparation system and just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision, or prohibit a crash.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard.

This front automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle ahead is detected, indicated by the vehicle ahead indicator .

On vehicles with front pedestrian braking, front automatic braking can also occur when a pedestrian ahead is detected, indicated by the pedestrian ahead indicator .

If equipped only with front camera, the system operates up to a speed of approx. 80 km/h. Below a speed of 40 km/h the system can apply full braking.

Emergency automatic braking may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to attempt to avoid a potential collision. If this happens, emergency automatic braking may engage the electric parking brake to hold the vehicle at a stop. To release, press the electric parking brake button or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

### Warning

Emergency automatic braking is an emergency collision preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle.

Emergency automatic braking will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles and pedestrians.

## Forward Looking Brake Assist

In addition to the brake preparation system and emergency automatic braking, the forward looking brake assist function increases brake sensitivity. Therefore, less brake pedal pressure is required to achieve immediate hard braking.

This function helps the driver brake faster and harder before the imminent collision.

If equipped with only a front camera, the system operates up to a speed of approx. 80 km/h.

### Warning

Autonomous emergency braking is not designed to apply hard autonomous braking or to automatically avoid a collision. It is designed to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision. It may not react to animals. After

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

The system is designed to work with all occupants wearing their seat belts.

## Intelligent Brake Assist

If the vehicle is equipped with a radar unit, intelligent brake assist may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time are normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed.

Intelligent brake assist will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

### Warning

Intelligent brake assist may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

## Front Pedestrian Braking

See *Front Pedestrian Protection System* ⇨ 300.

## Deactivation

AEB can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126. If deactivated a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

### System Limitations

In some cases, the AEB system may provide automatic braking in situations that seem to be unnecessary, such as in parking garages, due to traffic signs in a curve or due to vehicles in another lane. This is normal operation; the vehicle does not need service.

Firmly apply the accelerator pedal to override the automatic braking if the situation and the surroundings permit.

In the following cases, AEB performance is limited:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Detecting all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- Detecting a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.
- During night-time driving.

- The sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.

To avoid malfunction, always keep the areas of the camera sensor in the windscreen and the radar unit behind the radiator grille clean from dirt, dust, ice and snow.

#### **Warning**

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

### Fault

Messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) if the system does not work as it should, or if a fault is detected. See a dealer for assistance.

### Front Pedestrian Protection System

Front pedestrian protection may assist to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end collisions with nearby pedestrians when driving in a forward gear.

The system uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a pedestrian in your path, directly ahead.

Front pedestrian protection can detect pedestrians and provide an alert while the vehicle is in a forward gear at speeds between 8 km/h and 80 km/h. Additionally front pedestrian protection can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle.

During daytime driving, the system detects pedestrians up to a distance of approx. 40 metres. When driving at night, system performance is limited.

Front pedestrian protection can be set to Off, Alert, or Alert & Brake. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

**Danger**



Front pedestrian braking does not provide an alert or automatically brake the vehicle, unless it detects a pedestrian.

The system may not detect pedestrians, including children, when the pedestrian is not directly ahead, not fully visible, not standing upright, or when part of a group.


Front pedestrian protection includes:

- Detecting a pedestrian ahead.
- Front pedestrian alert.
- Automatic braking.

**Detecting Pedestrian Ahead**

A pedestrian detected ahead, up to a distance of approximately 40 m, is indicated by  displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). On vehicles with head-up display,  is projected on the windscreen.

**Front Pedestrian Alert**

When approaching a detected pedestrian too quickly, a red flashing LED alert or the  in the head-up display is projected on the windscreen in the driver's field of view. A warning chime is also provided.

The brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as required.

Cruise control or adaptive cruise control may be disengaged when the front pedestrian alert occurs.

**Automatic Braking**

Automatic braking can be disabled/enabled. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

If enabled and a collision into a pedestrian directly ahead is imminent, and the brakes have not been applied, automatic braking may apply the brakes moderately or brake the vehicle hard. This can help avoid some very low speed pedestrian collisions or reduce pedestrian injury.

Automatic braking levels may be reduced under certain conditions, such as higher speeds.

If this happens, automatic braking may engage the electric parking brake to hold the vehicle at a stop.

Release the parking brake. A firm press of the accelerator pedal will also release automatic braking and the electric parking brake.

This system includes intelligent brake assist, and the emergency automatic braking system may also respond to pedestrians. See *Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)* ⇨ 297.

### General Information

#### Warning

The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

#### Warning

Front pedestrian braking may alert or automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

undesired. It could falsely alert or brake for objects similar in shape or size to pedestrians, including shadows.

This is normal operation and the vehicle does not need a service. To override automatic braking, firmly press the accelerator pedal if it is safe to do so.

#### Warning

Using the front pedestrian braking system while towing a trailer could cause loss of vehicle control and a crash.

Turn the system to Alert or Off when towing a trailer. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

### System Limitations

In the following cases, front pedestrian protection may not detect a pedestrian ahead, or sensor performance may be limited.

- The vehicle speed is out of range; it needs to be between 8 km/h to 80 km/h in a forward gear.
- The distance to a pedestrian ahead is more than 40 metres.
- When driving on winding or hilly roads.
- When driving at night.
- Weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.
- The sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.



## Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

The side blind zone alert system detects objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified blind spot zone. A visual alert is displayed in each exterior mirror when objects are detected that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.



Radar sensors for side blind zone alert are located behind each side of the rear bumper.

### Warning


Side blind zone alert does not replace driver vision. The system does not detect:

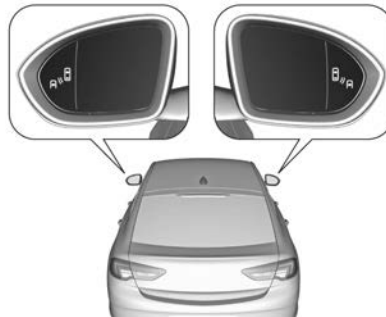
- Vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching.
- Pedestrians, cyclists or animals.

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over your shoulder and use the turn signal.

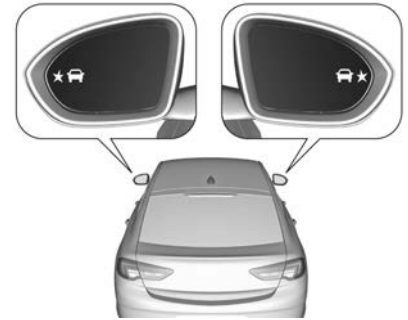
When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forward, either while passing a vehicle or being passed, the yellow warning symbol  will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the driver then activates a turn signal,  starts flashing yellow as a warning not to change lanes.


### Note

If the overtaking vehicle is travelling at least 10 km/h faster than the vehicle being overtaken,  in the relevant exterior mirror may not illuminate.



When the engine is started, both exterior mirror displays will briefly illuminate to indicate the system is operating.



If the vehicle is equipped with lane change alert  is displayed in the mirrors. See *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ 304.

### Detection Zones

The detection zones commence at the rear bumper and extend approx. three metres rearward and to the sides. The height of the zone is between approx. half a metre and two metres from the ground.

## 304 Driving and Operating

The system is deactivated if the vehicle is towing a trailer or if a bike carrier is attached.

Side blind zone alert is designed to ignore stationary objects such as guardrails, posts, curbs, walls and beams. Parked vehicles or oncoming vehicles are not detected.

### Deactivation

The side blind zone alert can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

### System Limitations

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances and will increase in wet conditions. The system may not operate properly when:

- Ice, snow, mud, stickers, magnets, metal plates, or anything else covers the sensors.
- Driving in heavy rainstorms.

- The area surrounding the detection sensor has been damaged or is not repaired correctly.
- There are extreme temperature changes.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, the symbols in the mirrors will be permanently illuminated and a message is displayed in the DIC. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

### Lane Change Alert (LCA)



Additional to the side blind zone alert system, lane change alert recognises rapidly approaching vehicles from behind in parallel lanes next to your vehicle. If the vehicle has lane change alert, then side blind zone alert is always included.

See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ 303.

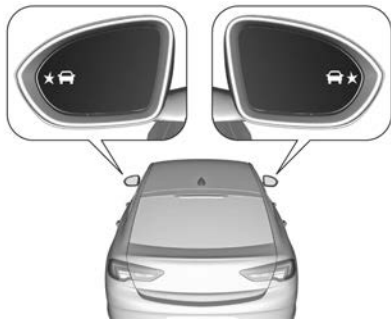
The lane change alert system alerts visually in each exterior mirror when detecting rapidly approaching vehicles from behind. The radar distance sensors are located behind each side of the rear bumper.

### Warning

Lane change alert does not replace driver vision. Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over your shoulder and use the turn signal.

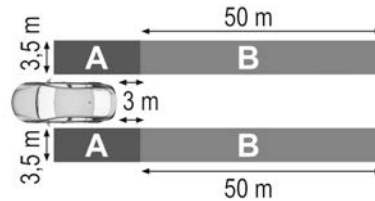
When the system detects an approaching vehicle from behind which is travelling considerably faster, the yellow warning symbol  will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the driver then activates the turn signal,  starts flashing yellow as a warning not to change lanes.

Lane change alert is active at all speeds.



When the engine is started, both exterior mirror displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating.

### Detection Zones



The system's sensors cover parallel zones on each side of the vehicle approx. 3.5 metres wide, 3 metres rearward in the side blind zone alert area **(A)** and 50 metres rearward in the lane change alert area **(B)**.

The zones start at each exterior mirror. The height of the zone is between approx. 0.5 metres and 2 metres from the ground.

### System Limitations

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances or in sharp curves.

The system can temporarily alert for objects in the blind zone during specific weather conditions such as rain, hail, etc. Driving on a wet road or in the transition from a dry area to a wet area can cause to illuminate, as water splash can be interpreted as an object.

Otherwise may illuminate due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs or other immobile objects. This is normal operation and the system does not need to be serviced.

The system may not operate properly when:

- Ice, snow, mud, stickers, magnets, metal plates, or anything else covers the sensors.
- Driving in heavy rainstorms.
- The area surrounding the detection sensor has been damaged or is not repaired correctly.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, the symbols in the mirrors will be permanently illuminated and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). Seek the assistance of a dealer.

### Note

When the vehicle is new, the system requires calibration. For optimal performance, drive as soon as possible on a straight highway road with roadside objects, e.g. guardrails and barriers for some distance.

### Deactivation

The lane change alert can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 126.

Deactivation is indicated by a message in the DIC.

## Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) helps to avoid collisions due to unintentional lane departures.

The front camera observes the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving.

If the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the steering wheel is gently turned to position the vehicle back into the lane. Turn the steering wheel in same direction if system steering is not sufficient. Turn the steering wheel gently into opposite direction if lane change is intended.

When crossing a lane marking significantly, lane keep assist displays a visual warning and an acoustic warning sounds.

Unintended lane departure is assumed:

- without using turn signal,
- using the turn signal in the opposite direction of the lane departure,
- without braking,


- without acceleration, or
- without active steering.


### Note


- The system may be switched off during detection of ambiguous lane markings, e.g. in construction areas.
- The system may be switched off if it detects lanes which are too narrow, too wide or too curved.


### Activation



LKA is activated by pressing . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate that the system is switched on.

When  in the instrument cluster or in the head-up display illuminates green, the system is ready to assist. The system is operational at vehicle speeds above 60 km/h and if lane markings are available.

The system gently turns the steering wheel and  changes to yellow if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction.

The system alerts by flashing  together with three chimes from that direction, if the lane is departed significantly.

The system is only operable when a lane marking is detected. If the system only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist for this side.

LKA detects hands-free driving. In this case a message in the Driver Information Centre is displayed and

a chime sounds as long as lane keep assist detects hands-free driving.

### Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain correct vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur.

Lane keep assist does not continuously steer the vehicle. The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The steering of the lane keep assist may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure.

The system may not detect hands-off driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather, etc.). The driver has full responsibility to control


(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving.

Using the system while driving on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle. Switch the system off.

### Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing . The LED in the button extinguishes.

The system is also deactivated automatically when a trailer is detected.

### System Limitations

The system may not operate properly when:

- Vehicle speed is out of range, e.g. below 60 km/h.
- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- When driving at night.

## 308 **Driving and Operating**

- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Vehicles are detected closely ahead.
- Banked roads.
- Road edges.
- Roads with poor lane markings.
- Sudden lighting changes.
- Vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres.

Switch off the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.

### **Fuel**



#### **EXHAUST WARNING – CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING**

Exhaust gases can contain carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas, which can cause unconsciousness and even death to both humans and animals.

Gases could be inhaled if the exhaust system on your vehicle is faulty.

To protect against exhaust gases entering the vehicle, the exhaust system and body should be inspected:

- Each time the vehicle is serviced.
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system.

(Continued)

### **Danger (Continued)**

- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or rear of the vehicle is damaged.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer if you think the vehicle needs inspecting for any of the above reasons.

Do not sit (or leave children or pets) in a parked vehicle for any extended period of time with the engine running. Turn the fan on using any setting that brings outside air into the vehicle. Do not run the engine in an enclosed area (such as the garage) any longer than is needed to move the vehicle.

**⚠ Danger**

Always switch off the engine and any mobile phones when refuelling.

Do not smoke or allow open flames or sparks near the vehicle when refuelling.

If fuel fumes are detected while driving, the cause should be identified and corrected without delay by a Holden Dealer.

Static electricity can ignite fuel vapour. Only use pumps, hoses and containers that are properly grounded when filling up with fuel.

To avoid injury to you and to others, read and follow all instructions at the petrol station pump.

**Petrol Engines****⚠ Warning****USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL**

When filling the fuel tank with an ethanol-petrol fuel blend, under no circumstances should fuel containing more than 10% ethanol be used.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation. These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

The use of fuel containing more than 10% ethanol may also affect your vehicle warranty to the extent that Holden considers that the fuel affects the specifications and quality of your vehicle.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

It is also important to note that when fuel containing ethanol is used, fuel consumption can be expected to increase due to the lower energy content of ethanol.

The vehicle may be refuelled with E10 and unleaded fuel containing no ethanol. It is acceptable to mix these fuels.

The use of any fuel, other than the fuel specified, may seriously damage the vehicle and may void the warranty. See *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ 310. Only clean fuel of good quality should be used.

### Diesel Engine

#### Warning

##### USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL

Under no circumstances should you use diesel fuel containing ethanol.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation.

These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to your vehicle and personal injury.

The use of premium unleaded petrol of 98 RON may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

The use of unleaded petrol of regular 91 RON rating may be used where 95 RON is not available, however a reduction in performance may be noticed.

#### Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

#### 3.6L V6

Use of clean unleaded petrol of 91 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.

The use of premium unleaded petrol of 95 or 98 RON may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

#### Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

### Diesel Engine

Diesel engines must only be run using commercially available diesel fuel that meets the requirements of Euro standard EN590.

Do not use fuel with more than 10 ppm sulphur content.

The use of bio-diesel containing up to 7 % fatty acid methyl ester ("FAME") also known as "B7" is also permitted provided the FAME meets

## Recommended Fuel

### Petrol Engines

#### 2.0L 4 Cylinder

Use of clean premium unleaded petrol of 95 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.



the Euro Standard EN14214, and the resultant B7 blend meets Euro Standard EN590.

Do not use marine diesel oils or heating oils.

The flow and filterability of diesel fuel are temperature-dependent. When temperatures are low, use diesel fuel with guaranteed winter properties.

### Caution

Use only biodiesel blends containing up to a maximum of 7 % FAME that meets Euro standard EN590.

Purchasing fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel with more than 7 % FAME or fuel that has abnormal fuel properties.

The use of any other biodiesel that does not have the certification referred to above, or has a FAME content exceeding  
(Continued)

### Caution (Continued)

7 %, may cause serious damage to your vehicle (including engine failure).

Damage attributable to the use of non-certified bio-diesel is not covered by your vehicle warranty. In no event will Holden be responsible or bear any liability for any damage or loss that may arise in connection with the use of any fuel that does not meet this specification.

Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

## Filling the Tank



The fuel filler is located behind the hinged fuel filler door on the driver's side of the vehicle.

### Danger

Before refuelling, switch off the engine and mobile phones.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

### Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a Holden dealer.



The fuel filler door can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler door by pushing the rear edge.



The vehicle has a cap-less fuel filler. Place the filler hose nozzle in position, straight into the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.

After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the fuel pump a maximum of two more times.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle.

Close the filler door and allow it to engage.

Clean any spilled fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible.

### Misfuel Inhibitor

#### Warning

Do not try to open the fuel filler neck flap manually. Disregarding this could lead to trapping of the fingers.

All vehicles are equipped with a misfuel inhibitor.



The misfuel inhibitor ensures the fuel filler neck flap can only be opened using the suitable fuel nozzle or a funnel for emergency refilling.

In case of an emergency, if refilling with a container the funnel must be used to open the cap of the filler neck.



The funnel is stowed in the load compartment or the glove box.

Place the funnel in position, straight into the filler neck and press with slight force to insert. Use the funnel to fill the fuel into the filler neck. After topping-up, re-stow the funnel in the load compartment.

### Diesel Fuel System Bleeding

If the fuel tank for diesel engines runs dry the fuel system must be bled to enable engine starting. See *Diesel Fuel System Bleeding* ⇨ 337.

### AdBlue

AdBlue® is a non-hazardous fluid that is injected into the exhaust system of diesel vehicles to reduce exhaust emissions.

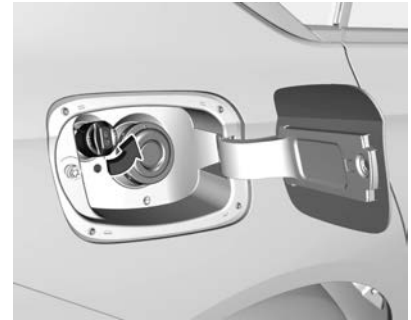
AdBlue, also known as diesel exhaust fluid, is available from reputable fuel and automotive outlets, or from your dealer who can also assist with refilling.

#### Warning

Never add AdBlue directly to the fuel tank.

If AdBlue is added to the fuel tank, do not drive the vehicle or start the engine. Contact your dealer immediately.

AdBlue is not a fuel additive and never comes into contact with diesel fuel. It is stored in a separate tank.



The filler is behind the fuel door next to the regular fuel filler. It has a blue cap.

For more information and filling procedures, see *AdBlue (Diesel)* ⇨ 251.

### Trailer Towing

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as caravans, boat trailers or any other special purpose trailer.

#### Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

A Holden Dealer will assist with supply and installation of towing equipment.

#### Maximum towing capacities (kg)

Engine	2.0L 4 cyl Petrol	3.6L V6 Petrol	2.0L 4 cyl Diesel
Braked Trailer	1800	2100	1800
Unbraked Trailer	750	750	750

#### Note

Exceeding these values could affect your vehicle warranty.

**Mandatory Equipment:** Holden genuine towbar and Holden genuine wiring harness.

#### Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may void the Vehicle Warranty, to the extent Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.



#### Warning

Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or injury caused by use of such equipment. The use of such

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

equipment may void your vehicle warranty, to the extent Holden considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle.

It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

**⚠ Warning**


When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter it if the tailgate is open.

When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the tailgate open.

(Continued)

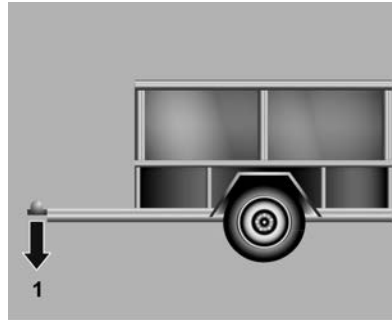
**Warning (Continued)**

- Fully open the instrument panel vents and set the climate control to face or bi-level mode and outside air  off.

For further information about carbon monoxide, see *Fuel* ⇨ 308.

**Trailer Recommendations**

**Tow Ball Load**



A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the tow bar. This weight is called the tow bar ball weight or tow ball load (1).

- The tow ball load should be 4% – 10% of the trailer mass and a maximum of 90 kg.

Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards within the trailer, to change the balance.

**Important:** Tow ball load must not exceed 90 kg.

Check the tow ball load before coupling the trailer to the towing vehicle.

If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.

Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow ball load is included. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ 383.

If maximum axle loads are exceeded, weight should be removed from the rear of the vehicle and transferred onto the trailer.

Ensure the weight of the packed trailer is not greater than the towing capacity of the Holden approved tow bar package fitted to the vehicle, or the vehicle's maximum towing capacity, whichever is lower.

### Towing Precautions

- When towing, check and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 356.
- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 Nm (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.

- Headlamps may need re-aiming after the loaded trailer has been hitched, particularly if a load distribution hitch is not used.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes, when descending steep hills.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches.
- Ensure the tow bar does not obscure the rear number plate. Remove the tow bar tongue when not required for towing.
- If a tow bar is removed, have any mounting holes in the underbody sealed to prevent entry of exhaust fumes, dust and water.
- The anti-rattle bolt and nut should be removed when towing to prevent damage to the bolt or tow bar tongue.
- The parking assist may be automatically deactivated when towing a trailer. If not, turn it off while a trailer is attached. See *Parking Assist* ⇨ 275.

- To avoid vehicle damage, the power tailgate may not operate with the RKE transmitter when a trailer is electrically connected.

### Trailer Brakes

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with an Aggregate Trailer Mass (ATM) of more than 750 kg.
- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

### Running-in When Towing

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.


If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission or rear axle.

## Vehicle Maintenance

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glovebox.

## Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

The vehicle has a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature as part of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. If TSC detects the trailer is swaying, the vehicle's brakes are automatically applied.

When TSC is applying the brakes,  flashes to notify the driver to reduce speed. If the trailer continues to sway, ESC will reduce engine torque to help slow the vehicle.

TSC will not function if ESC is turned off. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 264.

## Conversions and Add-Ons

### Add-On Electrical Equipment

#### Accessories and Vehicle Modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Holden. Furthermore, such changes may impact fuel consumption, CO2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to

no longer conform to the type approval, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

#### Driving lamps or Insect Screens

Do not fit any accessory over the upper or lower air intakes at the front of the vehicle, as this may affect engine cooling.

Holden Genuine Accessories are an exception, however they should be removed in high load and high temperature conditions.

### Caution

In high load and high temperature applications (e.g. towing) no objects should be fitted over the upper or lower air intake at the front of the vehicle, as this could affect cooling. This includes removing Holden Genuine Accessories in this area, in these conditions.

### Roo Bars

 **Warning**

Fitting a roo bar may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling.

Roo bars should not be fitted to vehicles operating in suburban areas, as they may increase the risk of injury to a pedestrian in the event of a collision.



## Vehicle Care

### General Information

General Information .....	320
Accessories and Modifications .....	320
Vehicle Storage .....	320
Emission Information .....	320
Emission Control System .....	321

### Vehicle Checks

Bonnet .....	322
Engine Compartment Overview .....	324
Engine Oil .....	329
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter .....	331
Engine Coolant .....	331
Engine Overheating .....	333
Washer Fluid .....	335
Brakes .....	335
Brake Fluid .....	335
Battery .....	336
Diesel Fuel System Bleeding .....	337
Wiper Blade Replacement .....	338

### Bulb Replacement

Bulb Replacement .....	338
Halogen Headlamps .....	339

Fog Lamps .....	340
Taillamps .....	343
Side Turn Signal Lights .....	348

### Electrical System

Fuses .....	349
Engine Compartment Fuse Block .....	350
Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....	352
Rear Fuse Panel .....	354

### Vehicle Tools

Tools .....	355
-------------	-----

### Wheels and Tyres

Tyres .....	356
Tyre Pressure .....	356
Tread Depth .....	357
Tyre Rotation .....	357
Buying New Tyres .....	358
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance .....	358
Tyre Chains .....	359
Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit .....	359
Tyre Changing .....	363

### Jump Starting

Jump Starting .....	369
---------------------	-----

### Towing the Vehicle

Towing the Vehicle .....	371
Towing Another Vehicle .....	372

### Appearance Care

Exterior Care .....	373
Interior Care .....	376
Floor Mats .....	376

## General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

## Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-genuine accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance, safety and durability.

These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Genuine Holden accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer for assistance with the Genuine Holden accessories that are available for your vehicle.

## Vehicle Storage

### Storage for a Long Period of Time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Fill the fuel tank completely.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Set shift lever to P (Park) to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Beware that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft system.

### Putting Back into Operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Activate the electronics of the power windows. See *Power Windows* ⇨ 43.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.

## Emission Information

The emission control systems are designed to reduce the amount of hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) that are emitted from the engine and fuel system into the atmosphere. HC and NOx, when

exposed to sunlight under certain conditions, contribute to photochemical smog. In addition, CO is toxic to inhale.

## Emission Control System

Major emission control systems the vehicle may have are:

- Evaporative emission control system. This system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapour from the fuel system and recycle the vapours through the normal combustion process.
- Crankcase emission control system. This system is designed to prevent blow-by gases from escaping into the atmosphere and recycle them through the combustion process.
- Exhaust emission control system. The various components of this system operate collectively to limit HC, CO and NOx emissions in the exhaust gas. The exhaust emission control system consists of components including

electronic control of spark, fuel and idle speed. In addition vehicles have a catalytic converter and closed loop mixture control system.

It is recommended that service and repair to fuel or emission systems be carried out by your Holden Dealer.

### Owner Responsibility

The engine, engine control system and exhaust system of the vehicle must NOT be modified in any way.

#### Warning

Any person who removes, modifies or hinders any part of the emission control system may be contravening Australian Design Rules. It is also illegal to drive a vehicle modified in this way.

## Maintenance Requirements

Have the vehicle serviced at the frequency shown in the Maintenance Schedule in your Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that servicing be carried out by a Holden Dealer who will maintain the vehicle's emission control system as per the Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that all fluid levels are checked weekly.

## Reducing Fuel Consumption

### Engine

Have the vehicle serviced regularly in accordance with the Maintenance Schedule in the Service & Warranty Booklet.

### Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 388.

### Wheel Alignment

Maintain correct front and rear wheel alignment.

### Warm-ups and Idling

Avoid long engine warm-ups. They are unnecessary and waste fuel.

Avoid long engine idling.

### Accelerating, Driving and Braking

Accelerate gently and avoid rapid starts.

Drive the vehicle at steady speeds where possible (after running-in).

### Riding the Brake

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal when you do not intend to brake.

### Air Conditioning

Switch off the air conditioning when not required, however, once every 2 weeks, with the engine running, switch the air conditioning on for 5 to 10 minutes to lubricate the seals (even in winter).

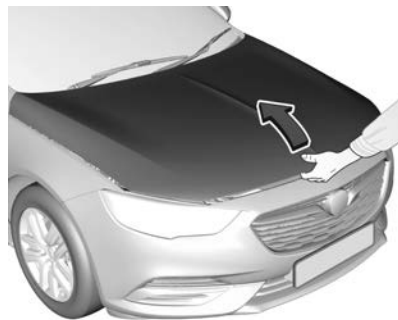
## Vehicle Checks

### Bonnet

#### Opening



Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.



Move the safety catch lever to the side and open the bonnet.

The bonnet is held open automatically.

#### Note

If the bonnet is opened during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically for safety reasons. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ 246.

## Performing Work



### **Warning**

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off. The cooling fan may start operating automatically, even if the ignition is off.

### **Danger**

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

### **Closing**

Check there are no objects left in the engine compartment.

Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (approx. 30 cm). Check the bonnet is engaged.

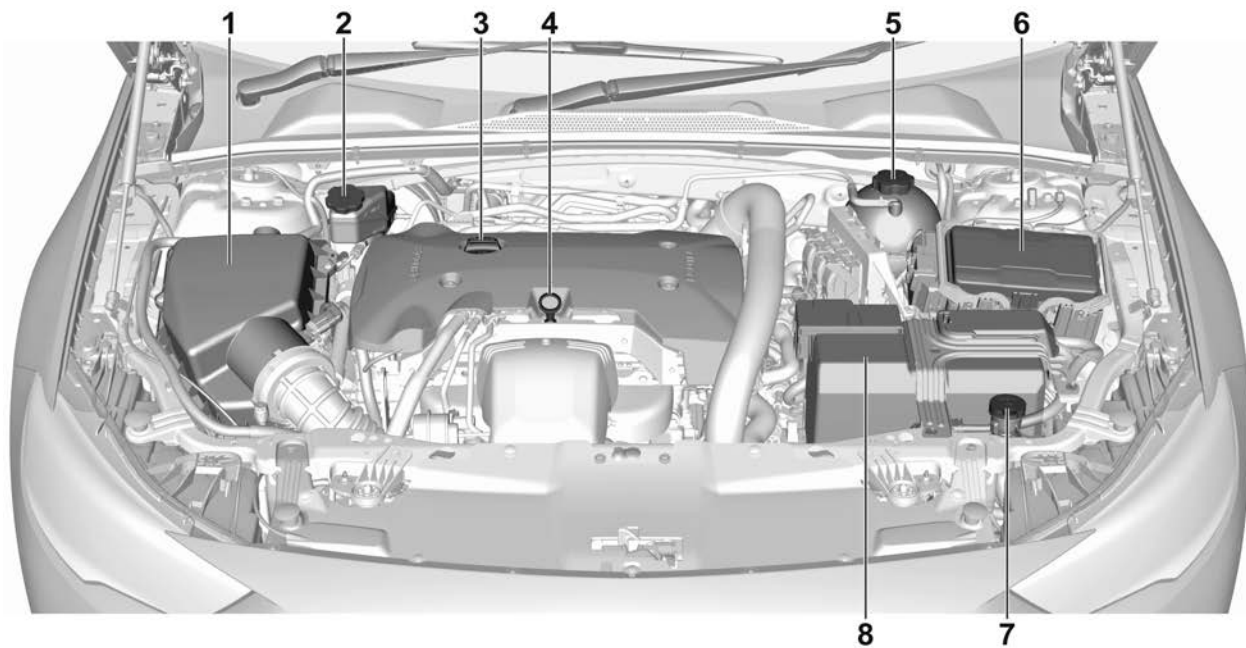
### **Caution**

To avoid denting the bonnet panel, do not press the bonnet into the latch.

### **Warning**

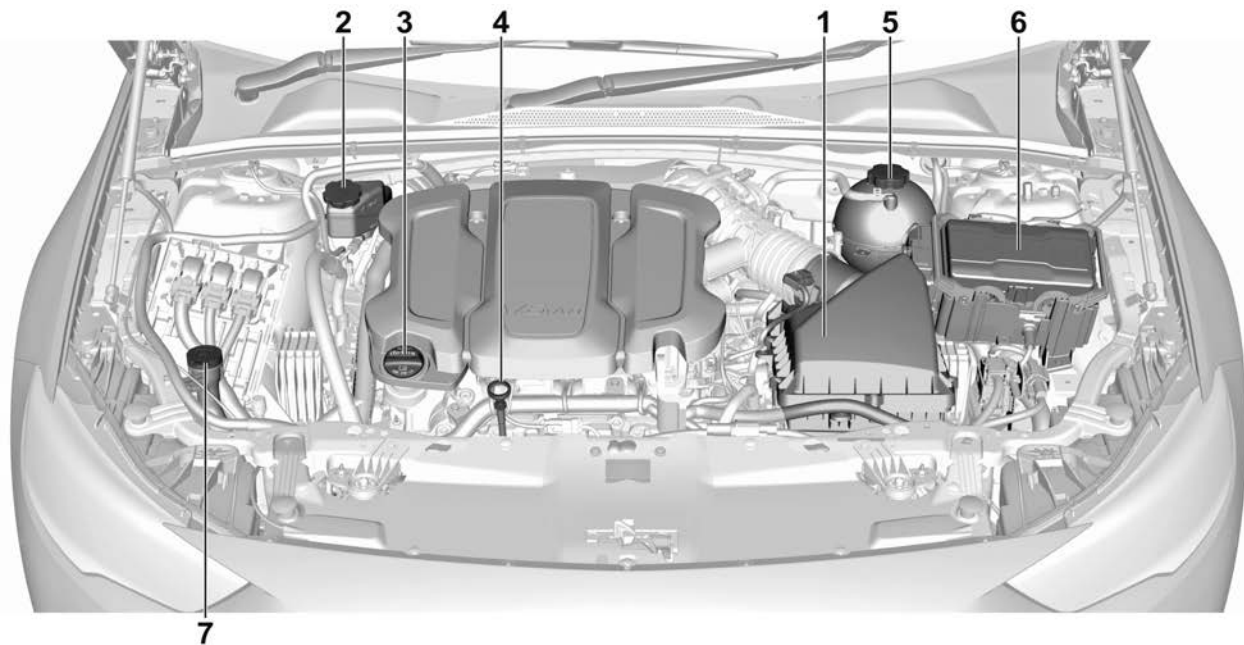
If while driving you notice that the bonnet has not been properly closed, pull the vehicle over to the side of the road at the earliest possible moment and close the bonnet correctly.

## Engine Compartment Overview



2.0L Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ 331.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ 335.
3. Engine Oil Filler Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 329.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 329.
5. Engine Coolant Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ 331.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ 350.
7. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ 335.
8. *Battery* ⇨ 336.



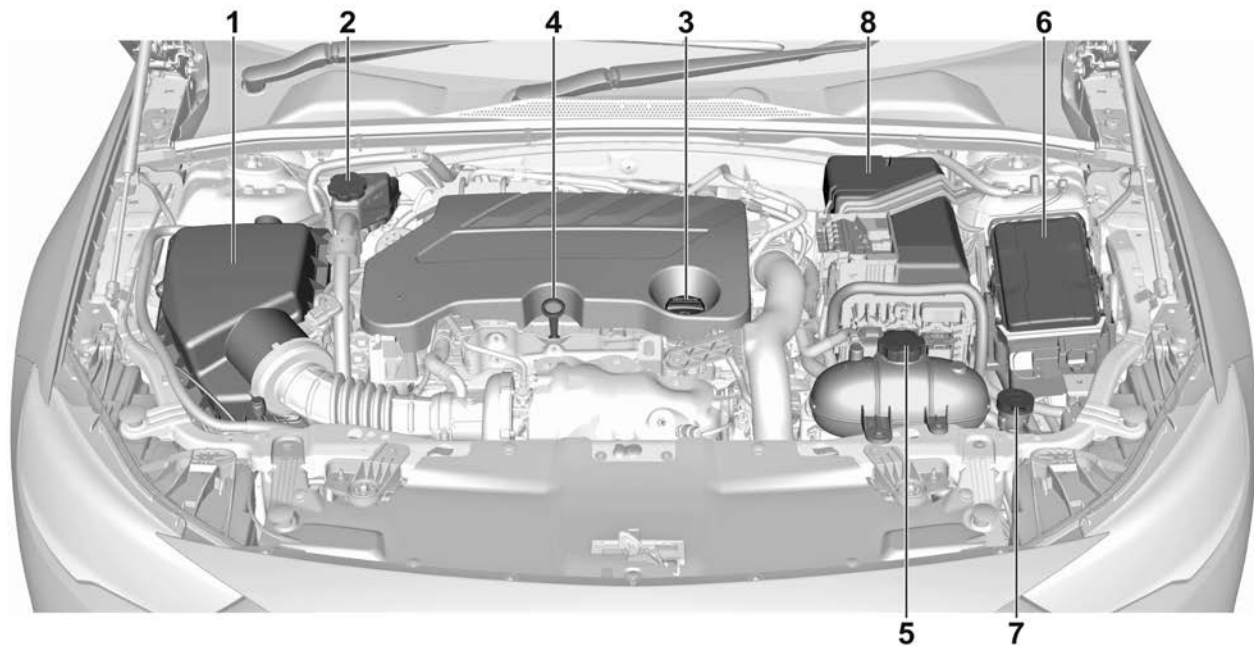
**3.6L Petrol Engine**



1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ 331.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ 335.
3. Engine Oil Filler Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 329.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 329.
5. Engine Coolant Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ 331.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ 350.
7. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ 335.

**Note**

The vehicle battery is located in the load compartment for vehicles with the 3.6L Petrol engine.



**2.0L Diesel Engine**

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ 331.
2. *Brake Fluid Reservoir*. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ 335.
3. *Engine Oil Filler Cap*. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 329.
4. *Engine Oil Dipstick*. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 329.
5. *Engine Coolant Tank*. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ 331.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ 350.
7. *Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir*. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ 335.
8. *Battery* ⇨ 336.

## Engine Oil

**⚠ Danger**

Engine oil is an irritant and if ingested can cause illness or death.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

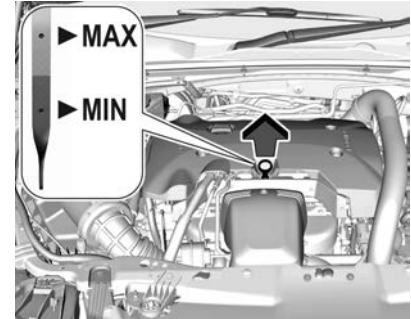
Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

### Checking Oil Level

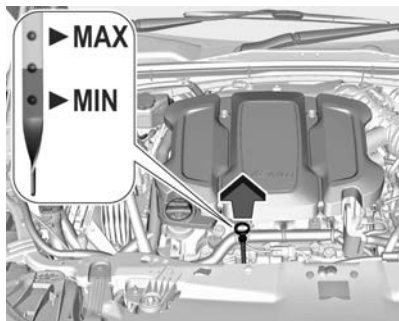
The engine must be at operating temperature and the ignition turned off for at least 10 minutes.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.

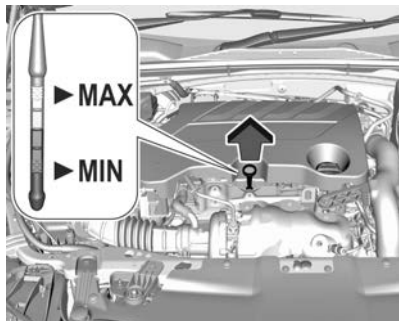
2. Remove the dipstick and wipe clean:



**2.0L Petrol Engine**



3.6L Petrol Engine



2.0L Diesel Engine

3. Reinsert the dipstick firmly.

4. Remove and read the oil level. The level should be between the MIN and MAX marks. Add oil if the level is at or below the MIN mark.

### Dilution

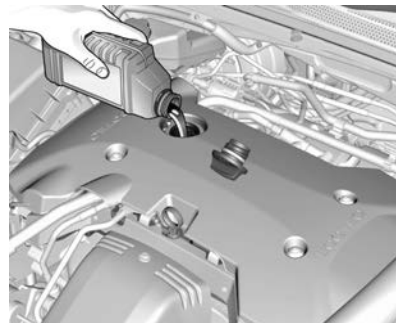
When a vehicle is frequently driven on short trips, the engine often fails to reach normal operating temperatures:

- The oil becomes diluted by fuel and moisture that settles in the oil pan.
- This may raise the oil level creating a false reading on the engine oil dipstick.

For example, in a vehicle that has accumulated 1,500 km of short distance or intermittent city operation and has consumed a normal amount of oil, the level may not have dropped from the upper area/mark, due to dilution. If this vehicle is driven for some distance at highway speeds the dilution elements evaporate, resulting in a sudden drop in oil level.

### Adding Engine Oil

See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 379 and *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ 387.



1. Rotate the engine oil filler cap anticlockwise and remove.
2. Add enough oil to reach within the MAX mark.
3. Check the level on the dipstick and add further oil if necessary.

The engine oil must not exceed the MAX mark.

**Caution**

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

- Replace the engine oil filler cap tightly by rotating clockwise.

**Note**

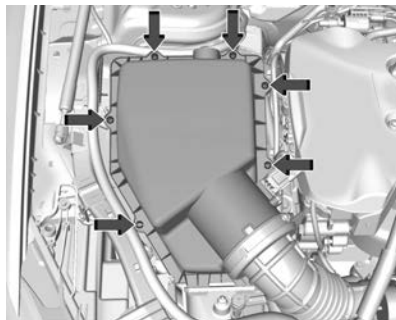
Non-detergent and other low quality oils, the use of break-in oil, tune up compounds, friction reducing compounds and other supplemental additives are not recommended. Their use increases costs, may be detrimental to the operation of the vehicle and may void the vehicle warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended fluid to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

**Engine Oil Change Intervals**

Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet.

**Engine Air Cleaner/Filter****4 Cylinder Engines**

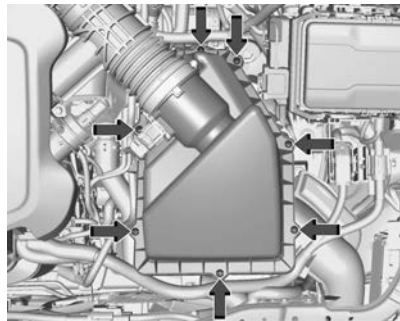
- Loosen the hose clamp and disconnect the air outlet hose.



- Remove the six screws and remove the air cleaner housing.
- Lift out the air filter.

**V6 Engine**

- Loosen the hose clamp and disconnect the air outlet hose.



- Remove the seven screws and remove the air cleaner housing.
- Lift out the air filter.

**Engine Coolant**

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct operating temperature.

### Warning

An under bonnet electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any under bonnet electric fan.

### Warning

Do not touch heater or radiator hoses, or other engine parts. They may be very hot and can burn you. Do not run the engine if there is a leak; all coolant could leak out. That could cause an engine fire and can burn you. Fix any leak before driving the vehicle.

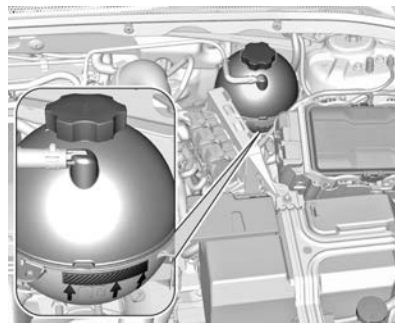
The engine cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DexCool<sup>®</sup> engine coolant mixture. This coolant needs to be checked and changed at appropriate levels. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 379 and refer to the Service & Warranty booklet.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ 333.

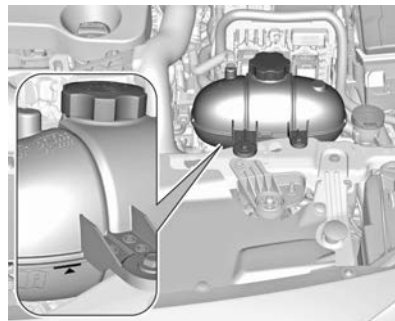
### Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

Check the coolant level in the engine coolant tank when the engine is cold.



**Petrol Engines**



**Diesel Engine**

When cold, the coolant level should be above the filling line on the front of the coolant tank. Top up if the level is low, see “Adding Coolant” further in this section.

### Adding Coolant

 **Warning**

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

**Caution**

Failure to follow the specific coolant fill procedure could cause the engine to overheat and could  
(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

cause system damage. If coolant is not visible in the surge tank, contact your dealer.

The coolant tank pressure cap can be removed when the cooling system, including the pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

1. Turn the pressure cap slowly anticlockwise. If a hiss is heard, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.
2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly and remove it.
3. Fill the coolant tank with a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DexCool to the area pointed to on the front of the coolant tank.
4. With the coolant tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot.

Watch out for the engine cooling fans.

By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more coolant mixture to the coolant tank until the level reaches the mark pointed to on the front of the coolant tank.

5. Replace the pressure cap tightly.

**Caution**

If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

### Engine Overheating

The vehicle has an engine coolant temperature gauge on the instrument cluster and overheat messages in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) to warn of engine

overheating. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* ⇨ 107. The DIC also displays overheat messages.

The decision may be made not to lift the bonnet when the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone or an engine overheat DIC message displays, but instead to get service help right away.

If the decision to lift the bonnet is made, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface. Then check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, do not continue to run the engine. Have the vehicle serviced.

### Caution

Do not run the engine if there is a leak in the engine cooling system. This can cause a loss of all coolant and can damage the system and vehicle. Have any leaks fixed right away.

### If Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

#### Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

### If No Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.

- Tows a trailer.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone and an overheat DIC message is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral), and let the engine idle.

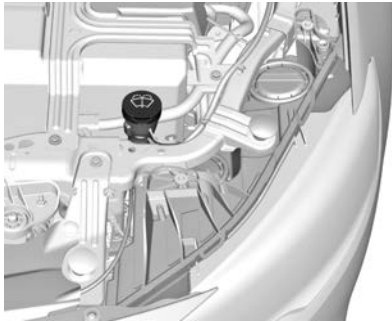
If the engine coolant temperature gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front. If the engine coolant temperature gauge does not go back to the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message does not display, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.



If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message still displays, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away. If overheat messages appear repeatedly, see your dealer.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message displays, turn off the engine until it cools down.

## Washer Fluid



### Note

4 cylinder shown, V6 on the opposite side.

Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid.

Do not use ordinary soap or detergent as they may damage the windscreen wiper blade rubbers.

Ensure the cap is secured.

## Brakes

In the event of the brake linings reaching their minimum thickness, a squealing noise sounds during braking.

Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

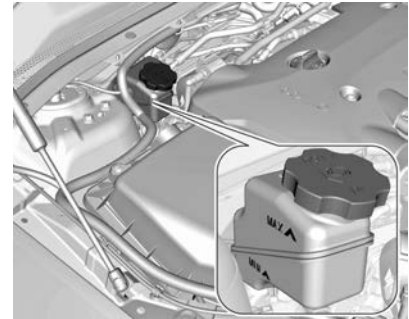
Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

## Brake Fluid



### Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilt.



The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks. If fluid level is below MIN, seek the assistance of a dealer.

Only top up with the specified brake fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 379.

## Battery

### Warning

Batteries emit an explosive gas mixture which may be ignited. Therefore, you should keep sparks and flames away from the battery at all times. Never smoke near a battery.

Batteries contain sulphuric acid. If acid contacts skin or clothing, flush immediately with plenty of water. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water and contact a doctor immediately. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash off immediately.

Take care with all metal objects and tools including items you may wear (for example jewellery, rings and metal watch bands) near battery terminals.

For vehicles with 4 cylinder petrol and diesel engines, the vehicle battery is located in the engine compartment.

For vehicles with the V6 petrol engine, the vehicle battery is in the load compartment behind the left-hand side trim.

There are connecting points for jump starting in the engine compartment. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ 369.

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Storing the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Ensure the ignition is turned off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

### Vehicle Battery Replacement

#### Note

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, ensure there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Ensure that the battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.

We recommend that you have the vehicle battery replaced by a dealer.

### Vehicle Battery Charging

 **Warning**

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 volts when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery might be damaged.

### Warning Label



#### Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.

- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

### Diesel Fuel System Bleeding

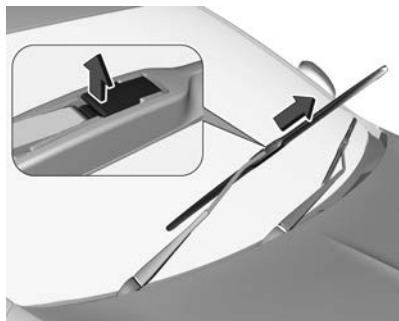
If the fuel tank has been run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled.

1. Turn the ignition on three times for 15 seconds at a time.
2. Crank the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds.
3. Repeat this process after no less than five seconds.

If the engine fails to start, seek the assistance of a dealer.

## Wiper Blade Replacement

### Windscreen



1. Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position.
2. Lift retaining clip to disengage the wiper blade and remove.
3. Attach the replacement wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm. Push until it engages.
4. Lower the wiper arm carefully.

## Rear Window

### Sportwagon, Tourer



1. Lift the wiper arm.
2. Disengage wiper blade as shown in illustration and remove.
3. Attach the replacement wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm. Push until it engages.
4. Lower wiper arm carefully.

## Bulb Replacement

Turn the ignition off and switch off the relevant lamp or close the doors.

Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Use only the same bulb type for replacement. Replace headlamp bulbs from within the engine compartment.

After a bulb replacement, turn the ignition on, operate and check the lamps.

### Bulbs to be Replaced by a Dealer

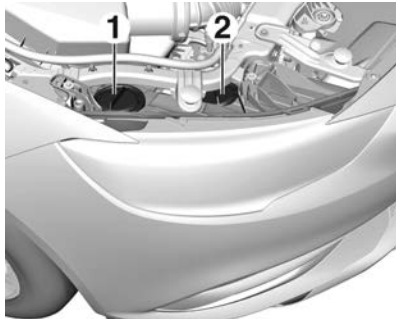
The following bulbs or LEDs should be changed by a dealer:

- Front turn signal lamps.
- Park lamps.
- Daytime running lamps.
- LED headlamps.
- LED tail and brake lamps
- LED number plate lamps.

- Interior and load compartment lamps.

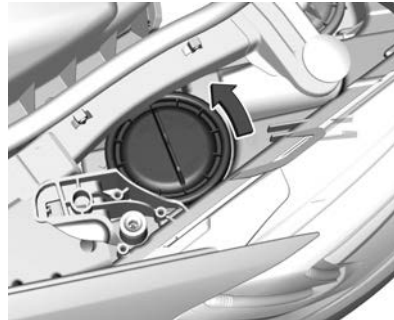
## Halogen Headlamps

Halogen headlamps with separate bulbs for low beam and high beam.

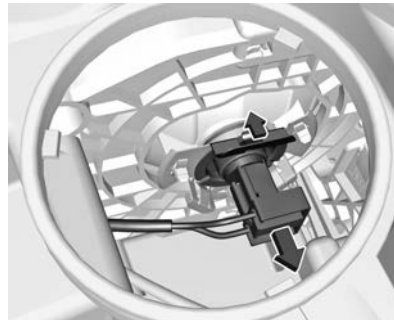


Low beam (1) – outer bulb.  
High beam (2) – inner bulb.

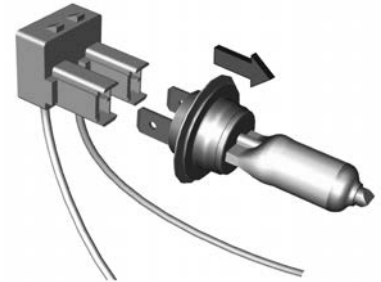
### Low Beam



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.

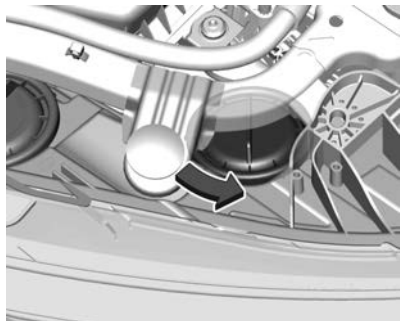


2. Disengage the bulb holder by pressing the retainer to the front. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector housing.

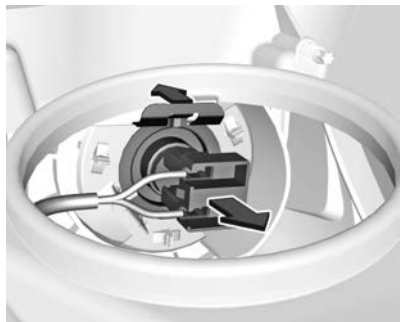


3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder.
5. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

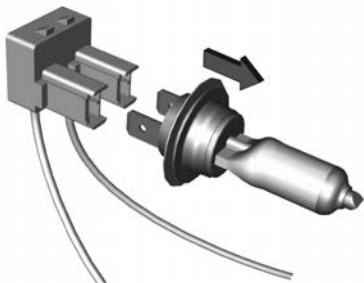
### High Beam



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.



2. Disengage the bulb holder by pressing the retainer to the front. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector housing.



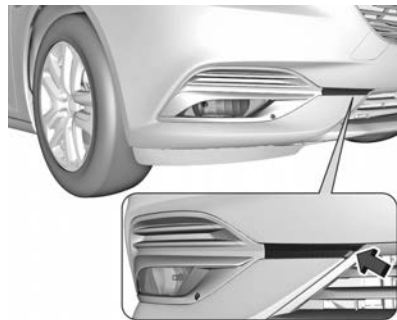
3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder.
5. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

### Fog Lamps

#### Note

For rear fog lamps see *Taillamps* ⇨ 343.

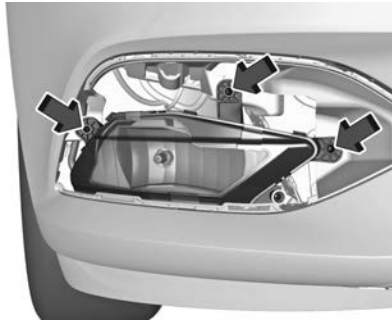
#### Liftback, Sportwagon



1. Disengage the cover with a screwdriver in the recess and remove the cover.



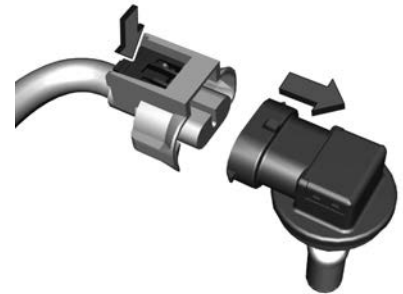
2. Remove the screw and remove the faceplate.



3. Remove the three screws and remove the lamp assembly to the front.



4. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.



5. Disengage the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.
6. Remove and replace the bulb unit and attach the plug connector.

**Note**

The bulb and the socket are one unit and are to be changed together.

7. Insert the bulb socket into the lamp assembly by turning clockwise and engage.
8. Install the lamp assembly and tighten the three screws.
9. Attach the faceplate and tighten the screw.

## 342 Vehicle Care

10. Attach and engage the cover.

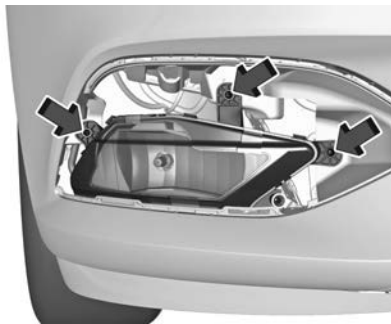
### Tourer



1. Remove the screw.



2. Lever out the faceplate with a screwdriver in the recess and remove the faceplate.

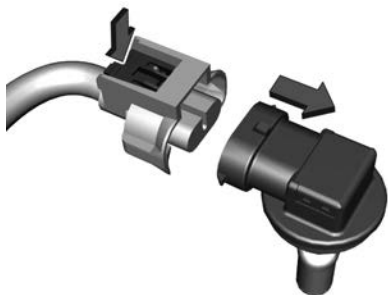


3. Remove the three screws and remove the lamp assembly to the front.



4. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.





5. Disengage the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.
6. Remove and replace the bulb unit and attach the plug connector.

#### Note

The bulb and the socket are one unit and are to be changed together.

7. Insert the bulb socket into the lamp assembly by turning clockwise and engage.
8. Install the lamp assembly and tighten the three screws.
9. Attach the faceplate and tighten the screw.

## Taillamps

### Rear Turn Signal, Reverse and Rear Fog Lamps

#### Liftback

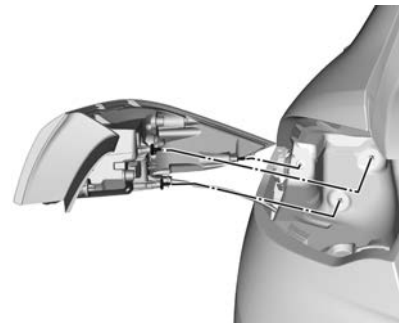
#### Lamp in the Body



1. Remove the cover on that side.



2. Unscrew the two plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.



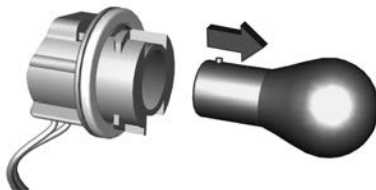
## 344 Vehicle Care

- Carefully withdraw the tail lamp assembly from the recess and remove.

Take care the cable duct remains in position.



- Turn the turn signal lamp bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.

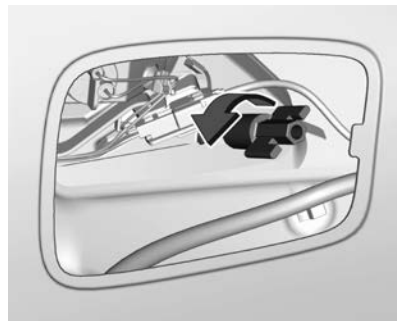


- Remove and replace the turn signal lamp bulb.
- Attach the bulb socket to the lamp assembly.
- Attach the lamp assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the securing nuts from the inside of the load compartment. Attach the cover.

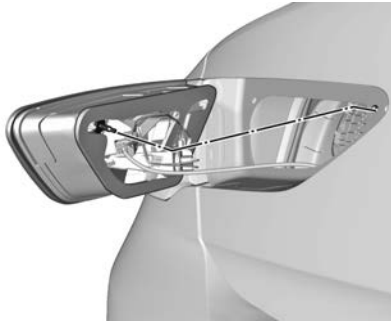
### Lamp in the Tailgate



- Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.

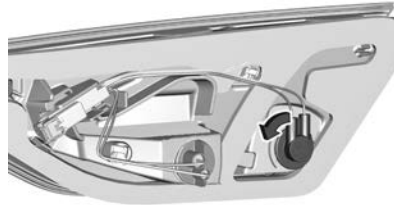


2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.

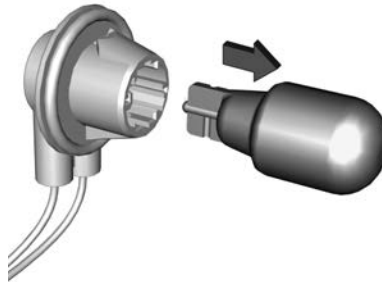


3. Carefully withdraw the lamp assembly from the recesses and remove.

Take care the cable duct remains in position.



4. Turn the reverse lamp or rear fog lamp bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.



5. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
6. Insert the bulb socket into the tail lamp assembly.

Fit the lamp assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screw from the inside.

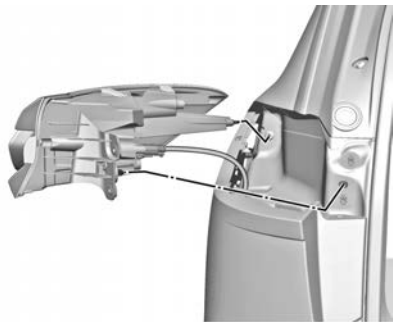
Attach the cover.

### Sportwagon, Tourer Lamp in the Body

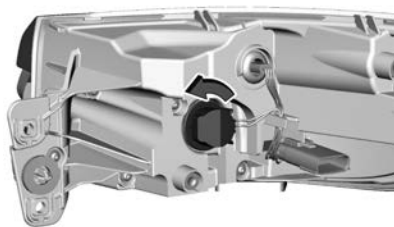


1. Open the covers with a screwdriver.

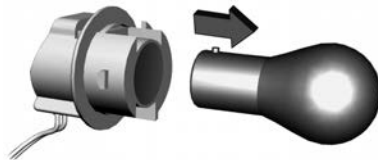
Unscrew and remove both screws.



2. Carefully withdraw the tail lamp assembly from the recess and remove.  
Take care the cable duct remains in position.



3. Turn the turn signal lamp bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.



4. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the turn signal lamp bulb.
5. Attach the bulb socket to the lamp assembly.
6. Attach the lamp assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the screws.  
Close the covers.

#### Lamp in the Tailgate



1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.

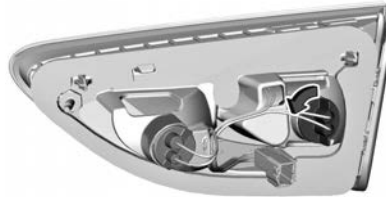


2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.

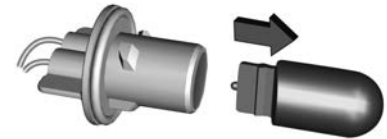


3. Carefully withdraw the lamp assembly from the recesses and remove.

Take care the cable duct remains in position.



4. Turn the reverse lamp or rear fog lamp bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.

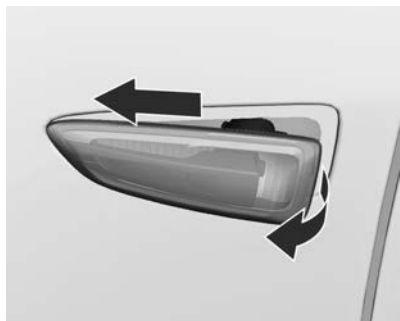


5. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
6. Insert the bulb socket into the tail lamp assembly.

Fit the lamp assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screw from the inside.

Attach the cover.

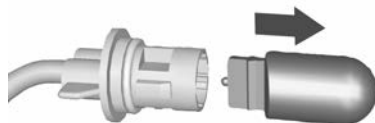
## Side Turn Signal Lights



1. Slide the lamp housing forward and remove it from the rear.



2. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from the housing.



3. Pull the bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
4. Insert the bulb holder and turn clockwise.
5. Insert the front of the lamp, slide it forward and insert the rear into place.

## Electrical System

### Fuses

The replacement fuse rating must match the rating of the defective fuse.

Depending on model, there are up to three fuse boxes in the vehicle:

- Engine compartment.
- Instrument panel.
- Rear compartment.

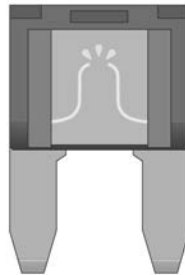
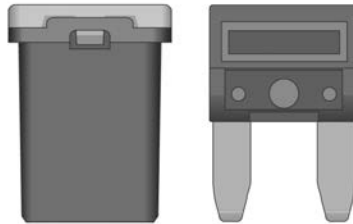
Before replacing a fuse, turn off the switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire.

#### Caution

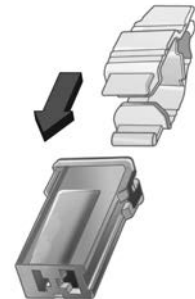
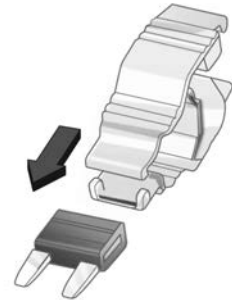
Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been rectified.

Some functions are protected by several fuses. Fuses may be fitted for some features not fitted to the vehicle.



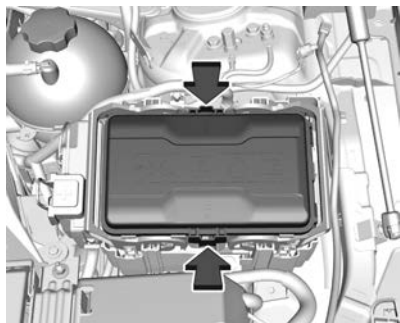
#### Fuse Extractor

A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.



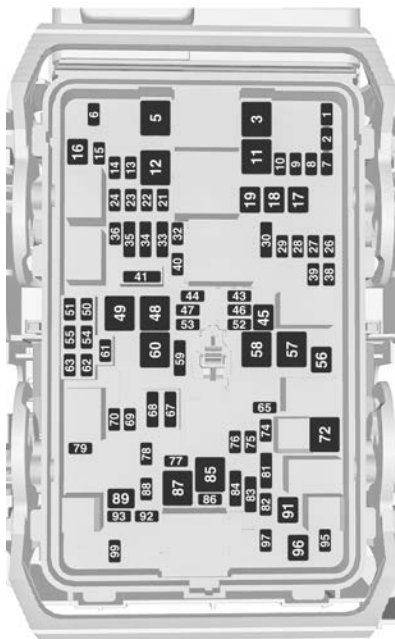
Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw fuse.

## Engine Compartment Fuse Block



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment.

Disengage the cover and remove it.



### Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.

Fuses	Circuit
1	-
2	-
3	ABS
4	-
5	-
6	Tailgate
7	Fog light
8	Memory module
9	-
10	Seat lumbar
11	DC/DC battery
12	Heated rear window
13	Heated mirror
14	-
15	-
16	Front wiper
17	Power seat, passenger
18	Sunblind
19	Power seat, driver



<b>Fuses</b>	<b>Circuit</b>
20	-
21	Sunroof
22	Rear wiper / Airbag
23	Adaptive forward lighting
24	-
25	-
26	Transmission control module
27	Ignition/Instrument panel
28	-
29	Rear view camera / Air vent
30	Malfunction indicator light / Trailer
31	-
32	Camera
33	Seat heater, front
34	Seat heater, rear
35	Damping / All-wheel drive

<b>Fuses</b>	<b>Circuit</b>
36	Fuel system
37	-
38	-
39	-
40	Steering wheel lock
41	-
42	-
43	-
44	Headlight level adjustment
45	-
46	Engine control module
47	-
48	DC/DC converter / Air vent / EBoost
49	Rear door control module
50	-
51	-
52	-

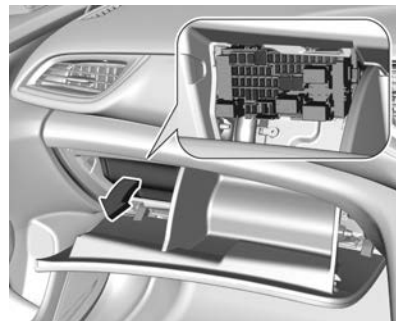
<b>Fuses</b>	<b>Circuit</b>
53	-
54	-
55	-
56	Starter
57	-
58	-
59	Left headlight (LED)
60	Cooling fan
61	-
62	-
63	-
64	-
65	Climate control
66	-
67	-
68	-
69	Right high beam (Halogen) / Right headlight (LED)
70	Left high beam (Halogen)

Fuses	Circuit
71	-
72	Starter
73	-
74	Transmission control module
75	Engine control module
76	Exhaust reduction system
77	-
78	Horn
79	Washer system
80	-
81	Engine control module
82	-
83	Ignition coil
84	Ignition coil
85	ECM
86	ECM
87	Diesel fuel heating

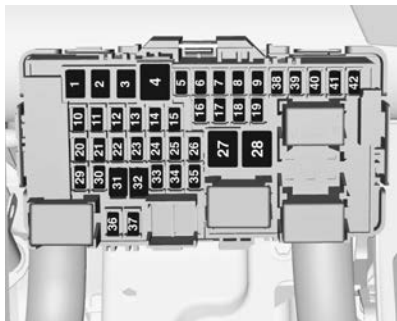
Fuses	Circuit
88	Air shutter
89	-
90	-
91	-
92	After boil pump
93	Electronic key system
94	-
95	Coolant pump
96	Diesel fuel heating
97	-
98	-
99	Coolant pump

After having changed the defective fuse, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages. If the fuse box cover is not closed correctly, a malfunction may occur.

## Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The fuse box is located behind a cover in the glovebox. Open the glovebox and remove the cover.


**Note**

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.

Fuses	Circuit
1	Left power window
2	Right power window
3	Body control module
4	Climate control fan
5	Body control module
6	Trailer provisions
7	Rear seat power folding
8	Body control module

Fuses	Circuit
9	Engine control module
10	Head-up display
11	NOx reduction / Pipe heater
12	NOx reduction / Soot sensor
13	UREA module
14	-
15	Transmission control module
16	Amplifier
17	Alarm
18	Body control module
19	UREA module
20	Body control module
21	Body control module
22	Body control module
23	Electric steering wheel lock
24	Airbag

Fuses	Circuit
25	Diagnostic connector
26	Power outlet load compartment
27	EBCM valve
28	Police provision
29	-
30	-
31	Steering wheel controls
32	Ignition switch
33	Climate control
34	Central gateway module
35	AUX / USB connector
36	Wireless charger
37	Rear wiper
38	-
39	Display
40	Parking assist
41	Overhead console

Fuses	Circuit
42	Radio

## Rear Fuse Panel



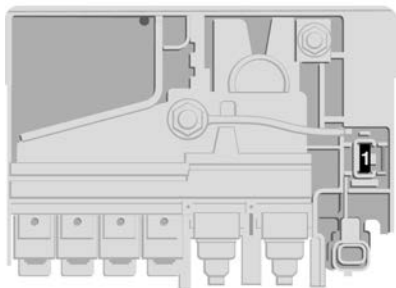
The rear compartment fuse boxes are located behind a cover in the left-hand side trim within the load compartment.

### Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.

## Battery Fuse Block, V6

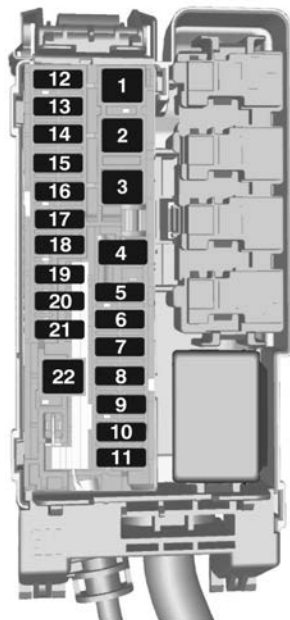
Remove the left-hand side trim cover and remove the battery fuse block cover.



Fuses	Circuit
1	Battery sensor module

## Rear Fuse Block

Remove the left-hand side trim cover and remove the rear fuse block cover.



Fuses	Circuit
1	-
2	-

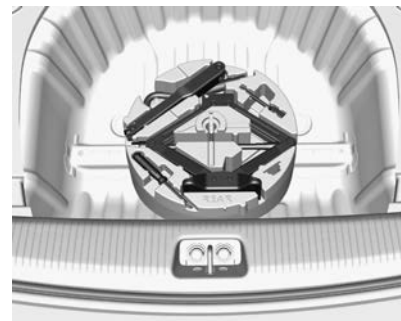
Fuses	Circuit
3	-
4	-
5	Hand-free tailgate sensor control module
6	-
7	-
8	Tailgate control module
9	-
10	-
11	-
12	Seat heater control module
13	Seat heater control module
14	-
15	Seat heater control module, rear
16	Seat heater control module, rear
17	-

Fuses	Circuit
18	-
19	-
20	-
21	-
22	Tailgate control module

## Vehicle Tools

### Tools

#### Vehicles with Spare Wheel



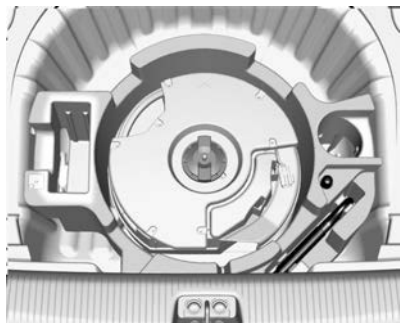
The jack, wheel wrench and if equipped, other items such as an extension bolt and/or retaining strap for securing a deflated wheel, the towing eye and a screwdriver are located below the floor cover in the load compartment .

#### Note

Vehicles without sub-woofer shown.

See *Tyre Changing* ⇨ 363.

## Vehicles without Spare Wheel



Items such as a screwdriver and the towing eye are located below the floor cover in the load compartment beside the sub-woofer.

See *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ 359.

## Wheels and Tyres

## Tyres

## Tyre and Rim Condition

- To avoid tyre and rim damage and possible tyre blow-out, do not drive over sharp edges.
- Drive over edges slowly and at right angles, if possible.
- When parking, ensure the tyres are not pressed against the edge of the kerb.
- Check the tyres regularly for damage, stones, punctures, cuts, cracks, bulges, etc. Also check the rims for damage. Contact a dealer if in doubt.

## Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures to avoid increased fuel consumption, uneven and premature tyre wear.



The correct pressures for tyres are shown on the tyre placard on the front passenger door frame and also in the tyre pressure table. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 388.

## Note

- Tyre pressure should be checked when the tyres are cold, as tyre pressure will increase as the tyres warm up.
- Check the air pressure of the tyres (including the spare) weekly, to ensure occupant safety, as well as reducing fuel consumption and increasing the life of the tyres.

- Check pressures when the vehicle has not been driven for over 3 hours. If tyre pressures must be checked immediately after driving more than 2 km, increase tyre placard pressure by 10%.
- Use a tyre pressure gauge to check the tyres. Simply looking at the tyres is not sufficient.
- Replace the valve dust caps.
- Check the condition of the tyre tread and inspect for stones or abnormal wear.
- For constant long distance driving, daily checking is recommended.

## Tread Depth



Replace the tyres when:

- They are worn to the point where the tread indicators appear.  
The tyres originally fitted to the vehicle have built-in tread indicators. When only 1.5 mm of tread remains, these indicators show as plain bars across the tread pattern at regular intervals around the tyre.
- The tread or sidewall is cut, split, or cracked deep enough to expose the cord or fabric.

- The tyre has a bump or bulge in it, indicating some kind of internal damage.
- The tyre has a puncture, cut or other damage which cannot be repaired because of the size or location of the damage.
- The cord or fabric is showing.

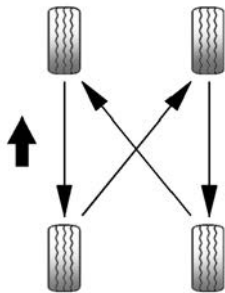
### Warning

Do not attempt to drive on a flat tyre more than is necessary to stop safely. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre and wheel beyond repair. Tyres which have been repaired or retreaded are not capable of being driven safely at high speeds. Therefore, their use is not recommended.

## Tyre Rotation

It is recommended that you rotate tyres at every scheduled maintenance service.

Driving conditions, driving techniques, vehicle loading and weather may warrant more frequent tyre checks and rotation.



Front and rear tyres can wear differently depending on:

- Types of roads driven on.
- Driving habits.
- Tyre pressures.
- Wheel alignment and balance.

New tyres should be fitted in pairs to the front. If replacing only one tyre, pair it on the same axle with the least worn of the other three.

### Buying New Tyres

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle or the table in this manual for tyre size and load rating.

See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 356 or *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 388.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride.
- Handling.
- Speedometer accuracy.
- Vehicle ground clearance.
- Vehicle payload capacity.
- Maximum vehicle speed.
- Tyre clearance.
- Tyre chain clearance.

Tyres with heavy treads and those made for better grip in the wet, should only be operated within the limits recommended by the manufacturer.

Tyres with a higher speed or load rating are acceptable, provided they are fitted to a suitable rim size.

### Warning

Tyres with a lower speed or load rating are NOT acceptable for fitment to the vehicle.

Replacing the factory fitted wheels and tyres with non-genuine wheels and tyres may affect the Vehicle Warranty and possibly the vehicle's insurance policy.

Contact a Holden Dealer for advice on suitable tyres.

### Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

Improper wheel alignment or balance can cause:

- Tyres to wear fast and unevenly.
- The vehicle to pull to one side.
- Vibration.

If any of these problems exists, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.



Tyre condition is checked when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden Dealer. They are able to diagnose any unusual signs of wear. If tyres are rotated, it is recommended that balance be checked at the same time.

## Tyre Chains

### Warning

Tyre Chains are only permitted on front tyres of size; 225/55 R17.

- Use low profile chains that add no more than 12mm thickness to the tyre tread and inner sidewall.
- Use chains that are the correct size for the tyres.
- Install the chains on the tyres of the front axle only.
- Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

- If the chains contact the vehicle, stop and re-tighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage the vehicle.
- Chains must not be fitted to a compact / temporary spare tyre.
- Check the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 388

Whenever tyre chains are fitted, switch off the ESC. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 264.

## Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

The vehicle may have an emergency tyre sealant and compressor kit, in place of a spare tyre.

The repair kit:

- Repairs minor damage to the tyre tread or sidewall.  
Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tyre.
- Repairs damage up to 4 mm in the tread area of the tyre.
- Does not repair damage at the tyre's side wall, near the rim.

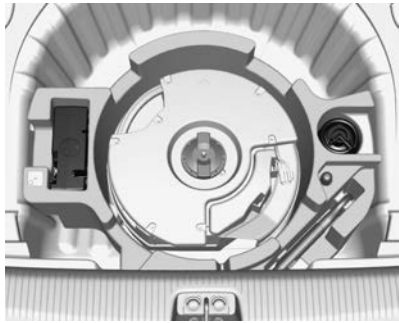
Take the vehicle to a dealer to have the tyre repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

### Warning

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.  
Do not drive on the repaired tyre for an extended time. Steering and handling may be affected.

## Temporary Puncture Repair

1. Apply the park brake.
2. Place the shift lever into **P** (Park).



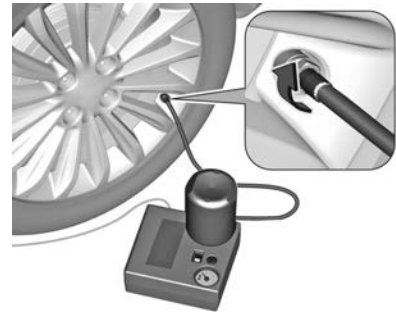
3. Remove the tyre repair kit from the load compartment, under the floor cover.
4. Remove the compressor and the sealant bottle.



5. Remove the electrical connection cable and air hose from the underside of the compressor.



6. Screw the compressor air hose onto the connection on the sealant bottle and fit the sealant bottle into the retainer on the compressor.
7. Set the compressor near the wheel with the flat tyre in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.
8. Unscrew valve cap from flat tyre.




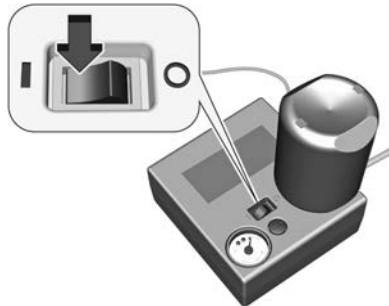
9. Screw the filler hose to the tyre valve.
10. Place the switch on the compressor to .

11. Connect the compressor plug to the vehicle's power outlet.
12. Start the engine and let it idle to ensure the battery does not run down.


**Note**

If running the engine, ensure the shift lever remains in **P**.

 <b>Warning</b>
Do not run the engine in an enclosed area or with passengers in the vehicle.



13. Press the switch on the compressor to I.  
The tyre fills with sealant.  
The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 6 Bar (85 psi / 60 kPa) while the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 seconds).  
The pressure starts to drop.  
Once the sealant is pumped into the tyre, the tyre is inflated.
14. The tyre pressure should be obtained within 10 minutes.
15. When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor.

 <b>Warning</b>
Do not over-inflate tyres due to risk of injury or damage to the tyre.

- If the tyre pressure is not obtained within 10 minutes:  
Remove the tyre repair kit.

Move the vehicle one tyre rotation.

Reattach the tyre repair kit and continue the filling procedure for 10 minutes.

Check tyre pressure once more. If the prescribed tyre pressure is still not obtained, the tyre is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a dealer.



- If the pressure is obtained within 10 minutes, adjust to the specified tyre pressure

by pressing the button next to the pressure indicator to increase or decrease.

**⚠ Warning**

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 10 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and air compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Disconnect and stow the tyre sealant and air compressor kit back in its original position. Contact a Holden Dealer.

16. Detach the tyre repair kit.

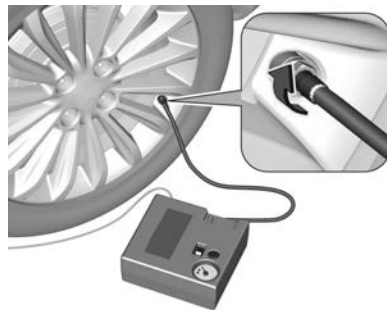
Push the catch on the bracket to remove the sealant bottle from the bracket. Screw the tyre inflation hose to the free connection of sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping.

17. Stow the repair kit in the load compartment.

**⚠ Warning**

Always stow the tyre sealant and air compressor kit in its original position. Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

18. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.
19. After inflating the tyre, remove the maximum speed label and place it in a visible location.  
It reminds you to drive cautiously and not to exceed 80 km/h until the damaged tyre is replaced or repaired.
20. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed within the tyre.
21. After driving approximately 10 km (but no more than 10 minutes), stop at a safe location to check the tyre pressure.



22. Screw the compressor air hose directly onto the tyre valve and compressor to check the tyre pressure.
23. If the tyre pressure is more than 1.3 Bar (19 psi / 130 kPa), set it to the correct value.
24. Repeat the procedure from Step 21 until there is no more loss of pressure.

If the tyre pressure has fallen below 1.3 Bar (19 psi / 130 kPa), do not continue driving. Contact a dealer.

25. Stow the tyre sealant and compressor kit in the load compartment.

This is a temporary puncture repair. Take the vehicle to a dealer to have the tyre repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

#### Note

- The driving characteristics of the repaired tyre is severely affected, therefore have this tyre replaced.
- If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 minutes. The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of approx. 7 Bar (100 psi / 70 kPa).
- The tyre sealant has an expiry date. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.
- Replace the used sealant bottle. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.

- The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.
- The adapters supplied can be used to pump up other items, e.g. footballs, air mattresses, inflatable dinghies, etc. They are located on the underside of the compressor. To remove, screw on compressor air hose and withdraw adapter.

## Tyre Changing

Some vehicles are equipped with a tyre sealant and compressor kit instead of a spare wheel. See *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ 359.

The spare wheel is classified as a temporary spare wheel and corresponding speed limits apply. Seek the assistance of a dealer to check the applicable speed limit if you are unsure.



The spare wheel has a steel rim and is located in the load compartment beneath the floor cover.

#### Note

Vehicles with sub-woofer: The spare wheel is located beneath the sub-woofer.

To remove:

1. Open the floor cover.
2. Vehicles without sub-woofer: The spare wheel is secured with a retaining nut.
  - Turn the nut anticlockwise and remove the spare wheel.

Vehicles with sub-woofer: The sub-woofer and spare wheel are secured with a retaining nut.

– Turn the nut anticlockwise and remove.

– Disconnect the audio speaker wiring connector and remove the speaker. Place in a safe location.

– Remove the spare wheel.

The vehicle tools are located under or beside the spare wheel. See *Tools* ⇨ 355.

3. After a wheel change:

- Vehicles without a sub-woofer: Stow the full-size wheel in the spare wheel-well as described below.
- Vehicles with a sub-woofer: Secure the tools and sub-woofer with the retaining nut and close the floor cover. Stow the

full-size wheel in the load compartment as described below.

4. After changing the wheel back to the full size wheel, place the spare wheel back in the wheel-well and secure with the retaining nut.

**Note**

Vehicles without a sub-woofer: The spare wheel is stored outside-up with the tools underneath.

Vehicles with a sub-woofer: The spare wheel is stored outside-down with the sub-woofer seated on top and the tools beside.

**Warning**

Storing the jack, a wheel or other equipment in the load compartment could cause injury if they are not secured correctly. During a sudden stop or a collision, loose equipment could strike someone.

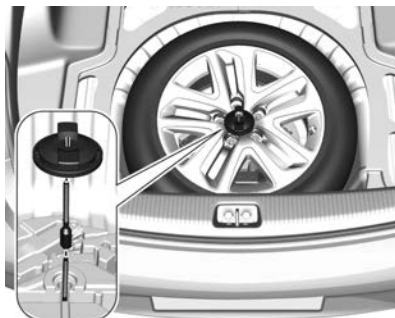
(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Store and secure the wheel, jack and tools always in their original storage locations.

**Stowing the Full Size Wheel****Vehicles without Sub-woofer**

Secure a deflated full size wheel facing upwards with the retaining nut in the spare wheel-well after attaching an extension bolt on the thread bolt. The extension bolt is supplied with the vehicle tools.



1. Attach the extension bolt onto the thread bolt.
2. Store the deflated wheel outside up in the spare wheel-well and secure it by turning the retaining nut clockwise on the extension bolt.

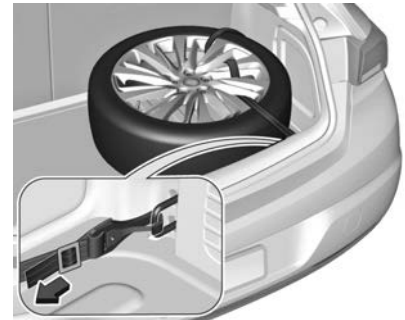
### Vehicles with Sub-woofer

Secure a deflated full size wheel in the load compartment with the retaining strap supplied with the vehicle tools.

1. Refit the sub-woofer and tools as previously described.
2. Place the wheel in the load compartment facing up and close to one side of the load compartment.



3. Place the loop end of the strap through the front cargo tie-down on the appropriate side.
4. Place the hook end of the strap through the loop and pull it until the strap is fastened securely to the cargo tie-down.



5. Insert the strap through the spokes of the wheel as shown.
6. Attach the hook to the rear cargo tie-down.
7. Tighten the strap and secure it using the buckle.

### **Danger**

Always drive with the rear seat backrests folded up and engaged when stowing a full size wheel in the load compartment.

### Temporary Spare Wheel

Only fit one temporary spare wheel. Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

If your vehicle gets a flat tyre on the rear while towing another vehicle, fit the temporary spare wheel in the front and the full sized tyre at the rear.

### Tyre Changing

#### Note

Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture.

The jack is maintenance-free.

No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.

Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.

Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.

Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.

Remove heavy objects from the vehicle before jacking.

#### Warning

All passengers must be out of the vehicle when it is being jacked.

Only jack the vehicle on hard, level surfaces.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

Use the jack only at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack, or damage to the vehicle.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

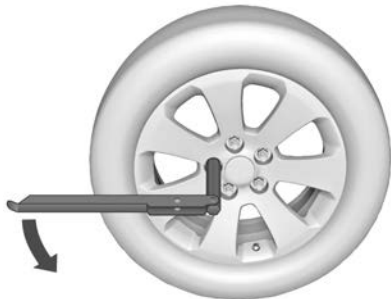
Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

The vehicle may have a steel temporary spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h. Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.



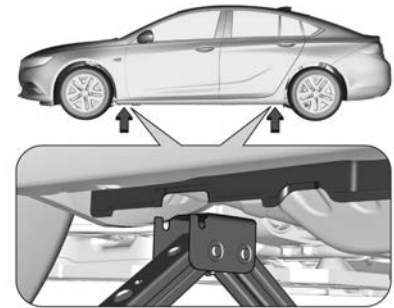
1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-slip surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage **P** (Park).  
If required, switch the hazard warning flashers on.
3. Remove the spare wheel as previously described.
4. If fitted, remove the wheel nut caps with a screwdriver. To protect the wheel, place a soft cloth between the screwdriver and the wheel.



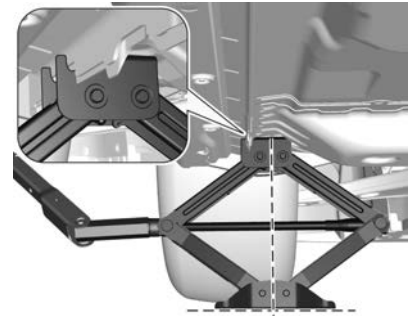
5. Fold out the wheel wrench and fit onto a wheel nut ensuring it locates securely. Loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.



6. Some models have side sill panels with vehicle jacking point covers. Pull off the jacking point cover before positioning the jack.



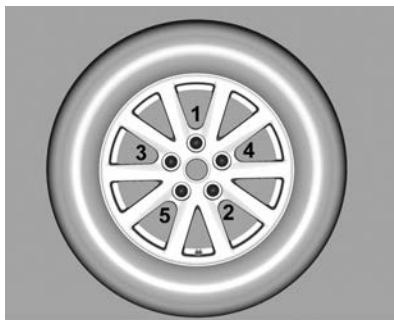
Position the jack under the vehicle jacking point closest to the wheel being changed.



7. Set the jack to the required height and position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.



8. Fit the wheel wrench onto the jack, and with the jack correctly aligned, rotate the wheel wrench until the wheel is sufficiently clear of the ground.
9. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
10. Change the wheel.
11. Fit the wheel nuts and tighten lightly.
12. Lower the vehicle.



13. Fit the wheel wrench onto a wheel nut and ensuring it is located securely, tighten each nut as tightly as possible in a crosswise sequence.

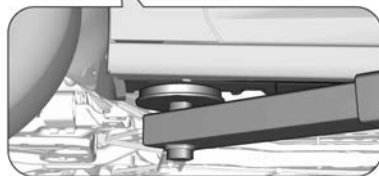
**Warning**

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 140 Nm for all models except VXR. Tighten VXR models to 190 Nm.

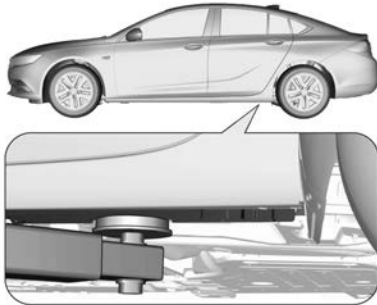
14. Install the wheel nut caps, if fitted.

15. Install the vehicle jacking point covers, if equipped.
16. Stow and secure the replaced wheel and the vehicle tools.
17. Check the tyre pressure of the installed wheel as soon as possible. Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.

**Lifting Position for Hoist**



Front arm position of the lifting arm pad centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



Rear arm position of the lifting arm pad centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

## Jump Starting

### Warning

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be push or tow started. Therefore, if the battery is flat, jump start the vehicle.

Batteries produce explosive gases, contain corrosive acids and supply levels of electrical current high enough to cause burns. Therefore, adhere to the following when working near a battery:

- Do not attempt jump starting directly from the battery.
- Do not let the jumper lead clamps touch each other or other metal parts.
- Do not allow the jumper leads to contact any rotating engine components.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

- Do not use open flames or sparks near the battery.
- Do not smoke near the battery.
- Never use a quick charger to start the engine.
- The battery must be removed from the vehicle for recharging.
- Only use the recommended battery otherwise the vehicle systems may not work correctly. Refer to a dealer for battery replacement.
- Wear eye protection such as safety glasses and avoid leaning over the battery.
- Battery acid is corrosive. If it gets on your skin, wash with plenty of water immediately. If it gets in your eyes you should not only flush with

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

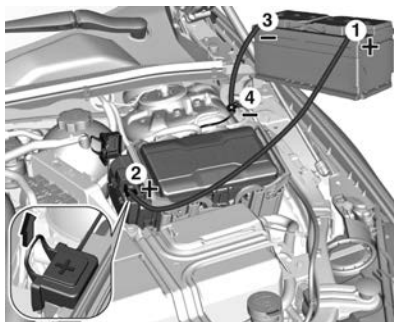
lots of water, but should also seek medical help. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash it off immediately.

- Remove rings, metal watch bands and other metal jewellery before working around the battery.

A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm<sup>2</sup> (25 mm<sup>2</sup> for diesel engines).
- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.

- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers such as the headlights, etc.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, and place the transmission in **P** (Park).



Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.

Lead connection order:

- Connect the red lead to the booster battery positive terminal.
- Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
- Connect the black lead to the booster battery negative terminal.
- Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment.

Route the leads so they cannot catch on moving parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After five minutes, start the other engine.
3. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of one minute.
4. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.
5. Switch on electrical consumers, e.g. headlights, heated rear window, of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
6. Reverse the above sequence exactly when removing leads.

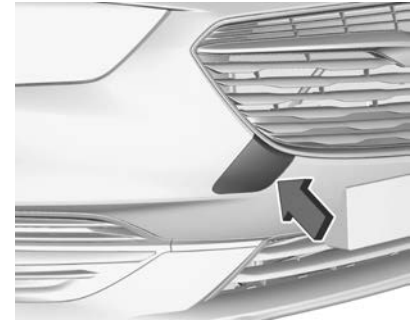
## Towing the Vehicle

To avoid causing damage, a flat-bed tow truck is the best method of towing the vehicle .

If a flat-bed tow truck is not available, use a standard tow truck in the following configuration:

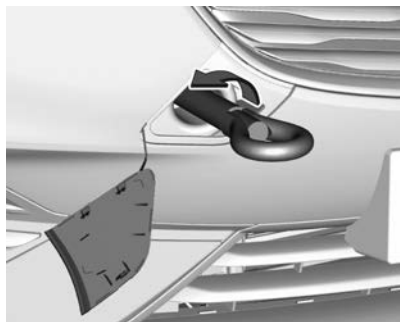
- For front-wheel drive vehicles: Raise the front of the vehicle with the rear wheels in contact with the road.
- For all-wheel drive vehicles: Raise the front of the vehicle and use a towing dolly to prevent the rear wheels contacting the road.
- Raise the rear of the vehicle and use a towing dolly to prevent the front wheels contacting the road.

Where a tow truck is not available, the vehicle can be towed as follows.



Disengage the cap at the slot and remove downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools. See *Tools* ⇨ 355.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

As required, attach a tow rope or similar to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Turn the ignition on to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper. Move the shift lever to neutral. Release the parking brake.

### Caution

Drive slowly. Accelerate smoothly and do not jerk the tow rope.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

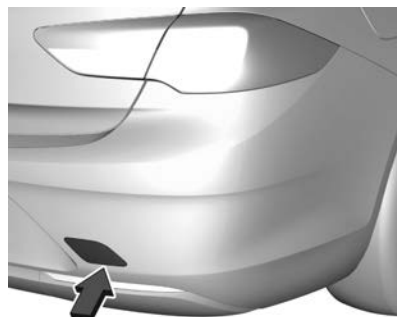
To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

The vehicle must be towed facing forwards. If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the maximum speed is 50 km/h and for a maximum of 50 km. If the front axle has been raised, the maximum speed is 50 km/h. There is no distance limitation.

Seek the assistance of a dealer.

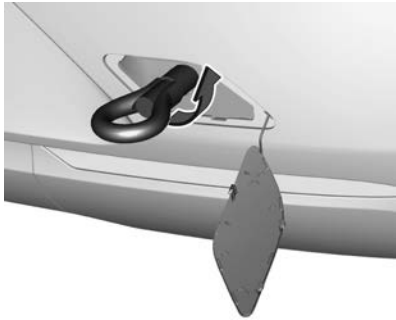
After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap with the outer flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

### Towing Another Vehicle



Disengage the cap at bottom and remove downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools. See *Tools* ⇨ 355.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

Attach a tow rope or similar to the towing eye. The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

### Caution

Drive slowly. Accelerate smoothly and do not jerk the tow rope.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert the cap with the upper flange into the recess and fix the cap by pushing. Stow the towing eye with the vehicle tools.

## Appearance Care

### Exterior Care

#### Washing

The paintwork of the vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage. Failure to do so may result in permanent damage, particularly in hot weather conditions.

Road bloom is a gradual build up of road and environmental grime. This should be removed with a paint cleaner once a year, in addition to normal washing.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. Never use an automatic wash that requires anything

## 374 Vehicle Care

touching the paint (other than water). The wipers must be switched off. Remove the antenna and external accessories.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, ensure the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a Holden Dealer.

### Caution

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois off the vehicle. Rinse the chamois frequently. Use a separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

### Warning

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead, until brake performance returns to normal.

### Exterior Lamps

Headlamp and other lamp covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive, solvent based cleaners or caustic agents and do not dry-clean them.

### Caution

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

### Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen, and below the front bumper when washing the vehicle.

### Polishing and Waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads).



Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

### Windows and Windscreen Wiper Blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

- Never use abrasive cleaners to clean glass.
- Refer to a Holden Dealer for windscreen washer additive.
- Old wiper blades can cause windscreen scratching. Regularly inspect and replace them.

#### Caution

Do not operate the wiper blades by hand as this damages the wiper drive mechanism.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

### Wheels and Tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

- Remove oil and grease with soap and water or detergent.
- Do not use petrol to clean tyres.
- Use a good quality tyre and bumper shine if required.
- A good quality wheel cleaner can be used for cleaning alloy wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners.

### Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by your Holden Dealer.

#### Caution

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

### Underbody

Substances can cause rust under the vehicle.

- Hose the underbody with clean water whenever the vehicle is washed.
- Where the vehicle is exposed to heavy concentrations of corrosive materials, inspect and wash the complete underbody at least once each year, preferably after winter exposure.

## Interior Care

### Warning

Many cleaning products are toxic, flammable or may damage the interior. When cleaning the interior, avoid volatile cleaners such as acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers, or cleaners such as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents. Never use carbon tetrachloride, petrol or naphtha for any cleaning purpose. Ensure that the vehicle is well ventilated while using any cleaners and always follow the cleaning product manufacturer's recommendations. Water based cleaners, rather than solvent based cleaners, are recommended.

Steam cleaning of seats is not recommended.

## Interior and Upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

The instrument panel should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clean seat belts with a mild, nonabrasive soap and lukewarm water.

After washing thoroughly, sponge the solution out of the belts.

### Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

## Plastic and Rubber Parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any

other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high pressure jet cleaners.

## Floor Mats

- Pull the mat up at each retainer to remove the mat.
- Push the mat down onto the retainers to replace.

### Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal.

Genuine Holden Accessory floor mats are designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that Holden approved floor mats be purchased.

Non-genuine floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver's side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver's side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

## Service and Maintenance

### General Information

Service Information ..... 378

### Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ..... 379

## General Information

### Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the correct intervals as specified.

Refer to your Service & Warranty booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

### Engine Oil Life System

The vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature and kilometres driven.

Based on driving conditions, the kilometres at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably.

For the oil life system to work correctly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed. When the system has calculated the oil life

has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1000 km.

It is possible that if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may indicate that an oil change is not necessary for a longer period than that shown in the service schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the service schedules outlined in the Service & Warranty booklet.

A Holden dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system.

To reset the system yourself after an oil change, see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 115.

## Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

### Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Engine Type	2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	3.6L V6 Petrol	2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel
Engine oil	5W-30 dexos (dexos1 Gen 2)		5W-30 or 5W-40 dexos (dexos2)
Diesel exhaust fluid	-	-	AdBlue® meeting ISO standard 22241-1 See <i>AdBlue (Diesel)</i> ⇨ 251
Coolant	50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant		
Automatic transmission fluid	Dexron® VI		Aisin AW-1 (GM Part No. 93165147)
Differential oil (AWD)	Refer to your dealer		
Transfer case oil (AWD)	Refer to your dealer		
Brake fluid	DOT 4 hydraulic brake fluid conforming to GMW3356		

## Technical Data

### Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) .....	380
Engine Identification .....	381
Identification Labels .....	382

### Vehicle Data

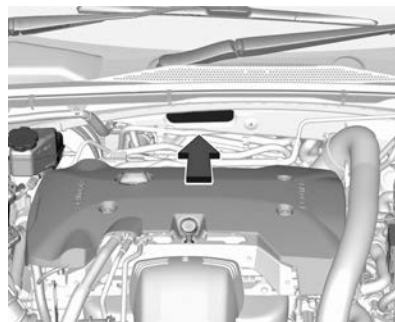
Engine Data .....	383
Vehicle Weight .....	383
Vehicle Dimensions .....	386
Capacities and Specifications .....	387
Tyre Pressure .....	388

## Vehicle Identification

### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



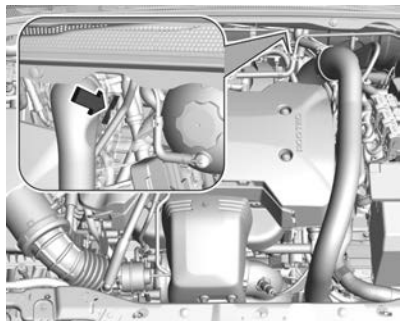
The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is visible through the windscreen.



The VIN is also stamped in the engine compartment on the firewall. It is also included on the vehicle compliance label.

## Engine Identification

### 2.0L Petrol Engine

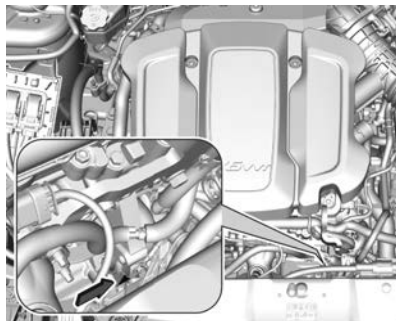


The engine serial number is located on the vehicle rear side of the engine block.

**Note**

An identification label containing the engine number may also be affixed to the engine.

### 3.6L Petrol Engine

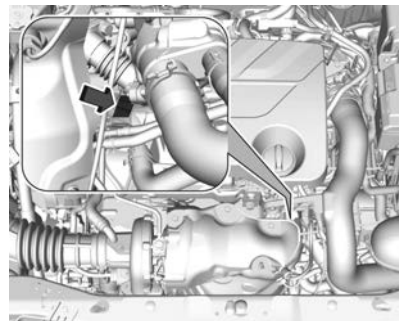


The engine serial number is located on the vehicle front side of the engine block.

**Note**

An identification label containing the engine number may also be affixed to the engine.

### 2.0L Diesel Engine



The engine serial number is located on the vehicle front side of the engine block.

**Note**

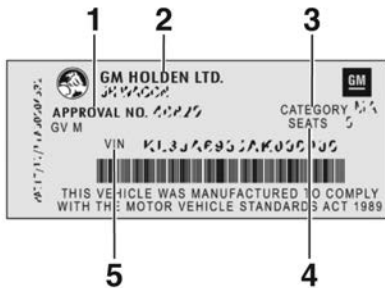
An identification label containing the engine number may also be affixed to the engine.

## Identification Labels

### Compliance Label



The vehicle compliance label is located on the front left door frame.



Information on the compliance label:

1. Approval number.
2. Manufacturer and vehicle model.
3. Category.
4. Number of seats.
5. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

### Identification Label



An identification label is located on the front left door frame.

### Built Date Label



The built date label is located on the front left door frame.



## Vehicle Data

### Engine Data

Engine type	2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	3.6L V6 Petrol	2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel
Engine	1998 cc	3649 cc	1956 cc
Engine power and torque	Refer to holden.com.au		
Fuel type	Petrol		Diesel
Octane rating (RON)*			
Recommended:	Premium unleaded 95	Unleaded 91	Diesel meeting Euro Standard EN590
Possible:	Unleaded 91** or premium unleaded 98	Premium unleaded 95 or 98	
Ethanol compatibility	E10		—
Biodiesel compatibility	—		B20

\*: For further information see *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ 310.

\*\*: The use of unleaded petrol of regular 91 RON rating may be used where 95 RON is not available, however a small reduction in performance may be noticed.

### Vehicle Weight

Overloading is a safety hazard and could also shorten the life of the vehicle.

**384 Technical Data****Maximum Vehicle Carrying Capacity  
Liftback**

<b>Engine</b>	<b>Model</b>	<b>Occupants (Average 68 kg each)</b>	<b>Luggage and Accessories (kg)</b>	<b>Total Load (kg)</b>
2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	LT	5	200	540
	RS	5	181	521
	Calais	5	180	520
3.6L V6 Petrol	RS	5	223	563
	RS-V	5	219	559
	Calais-V	5	169	509
	VXR	5	158	498
2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel	LT	5	202	542
	Calais	5	182	522

**Sportwagon / Tourer**

Engine	Model	Occupants (Average 68 kg each)	Luggage and Accessories (kg)	Total Load (kg)
2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	LT	5	292	632
	RS	5	266	606
3.6L V6 Petrol	RS-V	5	295	635
	Calais Tourer	5	285	625
	Calais Tourer-V	5	228	568
2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel	LT	5	228	568

**Note**

- The carrying capacity assumes that no accessories are fitted. If accessories are fitted, the carrying capacity must be decreased accordingly.
- Axle limits must not be exceeded. See "Axle Loads" later in this section.

**Axle Loads**

**Maximum Front and Rear Axle Loads**

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options or accessories fitted to the vehicle. Take the roof rack load into account when determining the rear axle load. Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

## 386 Technical Data

Engine	Model	Front Axle Load (kg)	Rear Axle Load (kg)
2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	Liftback	1060	1005
	Sportwagon / Tourer	1060	1125
3.6L V6 Petrol	Liftback	1125	1120
	Sportwagon / Tourer	1120	1230
2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel	Liftback	1120	1025
	Sportwagon / Tourer	1095	1100

## Vehicle Dimensions

Variant	Length	Width Incl. Mirrors	Height	Wheelbase	Track: Front	Track: Rear
Liftback	4897	2093	1455	2829	1596	1599
Sportwagon	4986	2093	1455	2829	1596	1599
Tourer	4986	2093	1500	2829	1596	1599

The above figures are based on design dimensions.

## Capacities and Specifications

Engine	2.0L 4 Cyl Petrol	3.6L V6 Petrol	2.0L 4 Cyl Diesel
Engine Oil (Refill incl. filter)	4.7 L	5.7 L	4.9 L
Coolant	5.0 L	9.0 L	5.9 L
AdBlue (Diesel exhaust fluid)	—	—	15 L
Fuel Tank	61.0 L		

All capacities are approximate





## Customer Information

### Customer Information

Trademarks and Licence Agreements .....	390
Owner Assistance .....	391

### Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Event Data Recorders .....	392
----------------------------	-----

## Customer Information

### Trademarks and Licence Agreements

#### Dexos, Dexron, DexCool

Dexos<sup>®</sup>, Dexron<sup>®</sup>, and Dexcool<sup>®</sup> and their associated logos are registered trademarks of General Motors LLC.

#### AdBlue

Adblue<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of Verband der Automobilindustrie (VDA).



The *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPhone<sup>®</sup>, iPod<sup>®</sup>, iPod nano<sup>®</sup>, iPod touch<sup>®</sup>, iPad<sup>®</sup> and Siri<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.



**Android**

Android™ and GooglePlay™ are trademarks of Google Inc.

**Owner Assistance****Holden Customer Care**

At Holden, we want you to be completely satisfied with your ownership experience. This applies to your vehicle and any Holden representative you may deal with.

Refer below for two options for seeking assistance with your query.

**Holden Dealerships**

Holden encourages you to seek assistance from your Holden Dealership. Each Holden Dealership is equipped to manage any sales, servicing, parts or technical query.

In the instance that you wish to escalate a query to a higher level of staff, further options are available to you.

As a first step, Holden suggests you discuss any concern with the relevant Department Manager (Sales Manager or Service Manager).

Alternatively, the Dealership General Manager or Dealer Principal will also be happy to assist you.

**Holden Customer Care Office**

Should you wish to speak to a Holden representative, you are welcome to contact the Holden Customer Care team.

Refer below for operating hours and various methods of communication.

**Operating Hours**

Weekdays: 8am – 7pm AEST

Saturday: 9am – 1pm AEST

**Telephone**

Holden Customer Care can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

**1800 033 349**

**Email**

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

**holdencustomer@gm.com**

**Written Correspondence**

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

**The Manager  
Holden Customer Care Centre  
GPO Box 1714  
Melbourne 3001**

Your written correspondence should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business
- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model

- Vehicle identification number (I.S.O. VIN), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box.

Before you write however, remember that the telephone is the quicker and more efficient means of communication.

### **New Zealand**

The information in this Owner's Handbook applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the Warranty and Owner Assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glovebox wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached on:

**0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)**

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Care.

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

**holdencustomer@gm.com**

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

**The Manager  
Holden Customer Care Centre  
PO Box 11195  
Ellerslie  
Auckland 1542**

## **Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy**

### **Event Data Recorders**

#### **Event Data Recorders**

The vehicle has a number of sophisticated systems that monitor and control several vehicle data. Some data may be stored during regular operation to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions, other data is stored only in a crash or near crash event by systems commonly called event data recorders (EDR).

The systems may record data about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated (e.g. engine speed, brake application, seat belt usage). To read this data, special equipment and access to the vehicle are required. This will take place when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden dealer. Some data is electronically fed into global diagnostic systems.

The manufacturer will not access information about a crash event or share it with others except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee.
- In response to an official request of police or similar government office.
- As part of the manufacturer's defence in case of legal proceedings.
- As required by law.

In addition, the manufacturer may use the collected or received data:

- For the manufacturer's research needs.
- To make it available for research needs where appropriate confidentiality is maintained and need is shown.
- To share summary data which is not tied to a specific vehicle with other organisations for research purposes.

## Index

<b>A</b>		Airbags (cont'd)
Accessories and		Seat Belt Tensioner Light ..... 109
Modifications .....	320	Side .....
Accessory Power .....	245	System Check .....
Adaptive Cruise Control .....	286	Alert
Adaptive Forward		Lane Change .....
Lighting (AFL) .....	133	Side Blind Zone (SBZA) .....
Adaptive Forward Lighting		All-Wheel Drive .....
(AFL) Light .....	114	AM-FM Radio .....
AdBlue .....	251	Anchor Fittings
AdBlue Warning Light .....	113	Top Tether .....
Add-On Electrical Equipment ...	317	Antilock Brake System (ABS) ...
Adjustable Air Vents .....	239	Warning Light .....
Adjustments		Appearance Care
Seat, Initial Drive .....	50	Exterior .....
Advanced Parking Assist .....	278	Interior .....
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine .....	331	Apple CarPlay and
Air Conditioning .....	233	Android Auto .....
Air Conditioning Regular		Armrest
Operation .....	240	Front Seat .....
Air Intake .....	240	Rear Seat .....
Airbag System		Armrest Storage .....
Check .....	71	Audio
What Will You See after an		Bluetooth .....
Airbag Inflates? .....	71	Theft-Deterrent
Airbags		Feature .....
Curtain .....	70	Automatic
Front .....	68	Dimming Mirrors .....

Automatic (cont'd)	Bonnet .....	322	Carbon Monoxide	
Engine Start/Stop Feature .....	Boot		Engine Exhaust .....	249
Headlamp System .....	Cover .....	82	Tailgate .....	31
Transmission .....	Brake		Cargo	
Automatic Transmission	Parking, Electric .....	261	Cover .....	83
Electronic Driving	System Warning Light .....	110	Tie-Downs .....	84
Programs .....	Brakes .....	260, 335	Catalytic Converter .....	249
Fault .....	Antilock .....	260	Caution, Danger, and Warning .....	3
Interruption of Power	Assist .....	262	Centre Console Lighting .....	140
Supply .....	Fluid .....	335	Centre Console Storage .....	81
Manual Mode .....	Braking		Chains, Tyre .....	359
Shift Lever .....	Autonomous Emergency .....	297	Charging	
Transmission Display .....	Break-In, New Vehicle .....	243	Wireless .....	98
Autonomous Emergency	Bulb Replacement		Charging System Light .....	110
Braking (AEB) .....	Fog Lamps .....	340	Check	
<b>B</b>	Halogen Headlamps .....	339	Engine Light (Malfunction	
Battery .....	Headlamps .....	338	Indicator) .....	110
Jump Starting .....	Side Turn Signal Lights .....	348	Child Restraint Installation	
Power Protection .....	Taillamps .....	343	Locations .....	76
Voltage and Charging	Buying New Tyres .....	358	Child Restraints	
Messages .....	Buzzers, Warning .....	125	Infants and Young Children .....	72
Blade Replacement, Wiper .....	<b>C</b>		Installation Locations .....	76
Bleeding	Camera		ISOFIX .....	76
Diesel Fuel System .....	Rear Vision (RVC) .....	268	Older Children .....	72
Bluetooth	Capacities and		Systems .....	73
Overview .....	Specifications .....	387	Cleaning	
Bluetooth Audio .....			Exterior Care .....	373
			Interior Care .....	376

- |                             |                                   |          |                                    |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|------------------------------------|
| Climate Control Systems     | Curtain Airbag System .....       | 70       | Driving                            |
| Electronic .....            | Customer-installed                |          | Electronic Programs .....          |
| 233                         | Equipment, Notices .....          | 71       | Environment .....                  |
| Clock .....                 |                                   |          | 242                                |
| 96                          | <b>D</b>                          |          | <b>E</b>                           |
| Cluster, Instrument .....   | Danger, Warning, and Caution .... | 3        | Electric Parking Brake .....       |
| 99                          | Data Recorders, Event .....       | 392      | Electric Parking Brake Light ....  |
| Compartments                | Daytime Running                   |          | 111                                |
| Storage .....               | Lamps (DRL) .....                 | 132      | Electrical Equipment,              |
| 79                          | Devices                           |          | Add-On .....                       |
| Compressor Kit, Tyre        | USB .....                         | 156, 193 | 317                                |
| Sealant .....               | Diesel Exhaust Fluid              |          | Electrical System                  |
| 359                         | AdBlue .....                      | 251      | Engine Compartment Fuse            |
| Control System              | Diesel Fuel System Bleeding ...   | 337      | Block .....                        |
| Emission .....              | Diesel Particulate Filter .....   | 249      | 350                                |
| 321                         | Dimensions                        |          | Fuses .....                        |
| Convenience Net .....       | Vehicle .....                     | 386      | 349                                |
| 85                          | Displays                          |          | Instrument Panel Fuse              |
| Convex Mirrors .....        | Automatic Transmission .....      | 254      | Block .....                        |
| 40                          | Service .....                     | 107      | 352                                |
| Coolant                     | Door                              |          | Rear Fuse Panel .....              |
| Engine .....                | Ajar Light .....                  | 114      | 354                                |
| 331                         | Locks .....                       | 26       | Electronic Climate Control         |
| Engine Temperature Gauge .. | Drive Systems                     |          | System .....                       |
| 107                         | All-Wheel Drive .....             | 259      | 233                                |
| Engine Temperature          | Driver Assistance Systems .....   | 268      | Electronic Driving Programs ....   |
| Warning Light .....         | Driver Information                |          | 257                                |
| 113                         | Centre (DIC) .....                | 115      | Electronic Stability Control ..... |
| Cooling .....               |                                   |          | 264                                |
| 233                         |                                   |          | Electronic Stability Control       |
| Cover                       |                                   |          | (ESC) Off Light .....              |
| Cargo .....                 |                                   |          | 112                                |
| 83                          |                                   |          | Electronic Stability Control       |
| Rear Floor Storage .....    |                                   |          | (ESC)/Traction Control             |
| 82                          |                                   |          | System (TCS) Indicator             |
| Covers .....                |                                   |          | Warning Light .....                |
| Boot .....                  |                                   |          | 112                                |
| 82                          |                                   |          | Emission Control System .....      |
| Misted Lamps .....          |                                   |          | 321                                |
| 138                         |                                   |          | Emission Information .....         |
| Cruise Control .....        |                                   |          | 320                                |
| Adaptive .....              |                                   |          |                                    |
| 286                         |                                   |          |                                    |
| Light .....                 |                                   |          |                                    |
| 114                         |                                   |          |                                    |
| Cupholders .....            |                                   |          |                                    |
| 79                          |                                   |          |                                    |

Engine	
Air Cleaner/Filter	331
Automatic Start/Stop	
Feature	246
Check Light (Malfunction Indicator)	110
Compartment Overview	324
Coolant	331
Coolant Temperature	
Gauge	107
Coolant Temperature	
Warning Light	113
Exhaust	249
Oil Pressure Light	113
Overheating	333
Starting	244
Engine Data	383
Engine Identification	381
Enter Destination	205
Entry Lighting	140
Event Data Recorders	392
Exhaust Fluid	
Diesel, AdBlue	251
Exit Lighting	141
Exterior Lamp Controls	131

<b>F</b>	
Fault, Automatic	
Transmission	258
Filter	249
Filter,	
Engine Air Cleaner	331
Fixed Air Vents	239
Flashers, Hazard Warning	137
Flat Tyre	
Changing	363
Floor Mats	376
Fluid	
Brakes	335
Washer	335
Fog Lamps	
Bulb Replacement	340
Front	137
Rear	138
Fog Light, Rear	114
Folding Mirrors	40
Following Distance Indication	
System	296
Forward Collision Alert	
(FCA) System	293
Front Airbag System	68
Front Fog Lamp	
Light	114

Front Pedestrian Protection	
System	300
Front Seat Armrest	57
Front Seat Position Seats	
Adjustment	50
Front Seats	
Adjustment	52
Heated	58
Ventilated	58
Front Storage	80
Fuel	308
Filling the Tank	311
Gauge	106
Low Fuel Warning Light	113
Recommended	310
Fuses	349
Engine Compartment Fuse	
Block	350
Instrument Panel Fuse	
Block	352
Rear Fuse Panel	354

<b>G</b>	
Gauges	
Engine Coolant	
Temperature	107
Fuel	106
Odometer	105

- Gauges (cont'd)  
Service Display ..... 107  
Speedometer ..... 104  
Tachometer ..... 106  
Trip Odometer ..... 105  
Turn Signal ..... 108
- Gear Shifting Light ..... 111
- General Information  
Vehicle Care ..... 320
- Glove Box ..... 79
- Guidance ..... 211
- H**
- Hands-Free Phone ..... 168, 225
- Hazard Warning Flashers ..... 137
- Head Restraints ..... 48
- Head-up Display ..... 121
- Headlamp Leveling Control ..... 136
- Headlamps  
Adaptive Forward  
Lighting (AFL) ..... 133  
Automatic ..... 133  
Bulb Replacement ..... 338  
Daytime Running  
Lamps (DRL) ..... 132  
Halogen ..... 339  
High-Beam On Light ..... 114  
High/Low Beam Changer ..... 132
- Headlamps (cont'd)  
Lamps On Reminder ..... 114
- Heated  
Rear Seats ..... 63  
Rear Window ..... 45
- Heated Front Seats ..... 58
- Heated Mirrors ..... 41
- Heating ..... 233
- High-Beam On Light ..... 114
- Hill Start Assist (HSA) ..... 262
- Horn ..... 15, 93
- How to Wear Seat Belts  
Properly ..... 64
- HVAC ..... 233
- I**
- Identification Labels ..... 382
- Immobiliser ..... 39
- Light ..... 113
- Indicator  
Pedestrian Ahead ..... 112  
Vehicle Ahead ..... 112
- Infants and Young Children,  
Restraints ..... 72
- Information  
Service ..... 378
- Information on Loading the  
Vehicle ..... 89
- Instrument Cluster ..... 99
- Instrument Panel Overview ..... 6
- Interactive  
Drive Control System ..... 265
- Interactive Drive Control  
System ..... 265
- Interior Lamps ..... 139
- Interruption of Power Supply ..... 258
- Introduction ..... 2, 143, 172
- ISOFIX Child Restraint  
Systems ..... 76
- J**
- Jump Starting ..... 369
- K**
- Keyless Entry  
Remote (RKE) System ..... 21
- Keys ..... 20
- L**
- Lamps  
Daytime Running (DRL) ..... 132  
Exterior Controls ..... 131  
Front Fog ..... 137  
Interior ..... 139
- Malfunction Indicator  
(Check Engine) ..... 110
- Misted Covers ..... 138



Lamps (cont'd)	
On Reminder .....	114
Reading .....	140
Rear Fog .....	138
Reversing .....	138
Side Turn Signal .....	348
Sun Visor .....	140
Taillamps .....	343
Lane Change Alert (LCA) .....	304
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) .....	306
Lane Keep Assist Light .....	111
Leveling Control	
Headlamp .....	136
Lighting	
Adaptive Forward .....	133
Centre Console .....	140
Entry .....	140
Exit .....	141
Illumination Control .....	138
Lights	
Adaptive Forward Lighting	
(AFL) Light .....	114
AdBlue Warning .....	113
Airbag and Seat Belt	
Tensioner .....	109
Antilock Brake System	
(ABS) Warning .....	111
Brake System Warning .....	110

Lights (cont'd)	
Charging System .....	110
Check Engine (Malfunction	
Indicator) .....	110
Cruise Control .....	114
Door Ajar .....	114
Electric Parking Brake .....	111
Electronic Stability Control	
(ESC), Off .....	112
Electronic Stability Control	
(ESC)/Traction Control	
System (TCS) Indicator	
Warning .....	112
Engine Coolant	
Temperature Warning .....	113
Engine Oil Pressure .....	113
Fog Lamp, Rear .....	114
Front Fog Lamp .....	114
Gear Shifting .....	111
High-Beam On .....	114
High/Low Beam Changer .....	132
Immobiliser .....	113
Lane Keep Assist .....	111
Low Fuel Warning .....	113
Pre-Heat .....	113
Seat Belt Reminders .....	109
Service Electric Parking	
Brake .....	111

Lights (cont'd)	
Traction Control	
System (TCS) .....	112
Loading the Vehicle .....	89
Locks	
Door .....	26
Safety .....	30
Low Fuel Warning Light .....	113

**M**

Maintenance	
Air Conditioning Regular	
Operation .....	240
Maintenance Schedule	
Recommended Fluids and	
Lubricants .....	379
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	110
Manual Mode .....	256
Massage .....	59
Memory Seats .....	56
Messages	
Battery Voltage and	
Charging .....	125
Vehicle .....	124
Messaging	
Text .....	221
Mirrors	
Automatic Dimming .....	41

Mirrors (cont'd)  
 Automatic Dimming  
     Rearview .....42  
 Convex .....40  
 Folding .....40  
 Heated .....41  
 Manual Rearview .....42  
 Power .....40  
 Tilt in Reverse .....41  
 Mistd Light Covers ..... 138

**N**

Navigation  
     Guidance .....211  
     Using the System ..... 198  
 Navigation System Overview ... 198  
 Net  
     Cargo .....85  
 New Vehicle Break-In ..... 243  
 Notices for Customer-installed  
     Equipment ..... 71

**O**

Odometer ..... 105  
     Trip ..... 105  
 Oil  
     Engine ..... 329  
     Pressure Light .....113  
 Older Children, Restraints ..... 72

Operation  
     Infotainment ..... 177  
     Infotainment System ..... 147  
 Outlets  
     Power .....97  
 Outside Temperature ..... 96  
 Overheating, Engine ..... 333  
 Overrun Cut-Off .....246  
 Overview ..... 145, 174  
     Navigation System ..... 198  
 Owner Assistance .....391

**P**

Parking ..... 248  
 Parking Assist .....275  
     Advanced ..... 278  
 Pedestrian Ahead Indicator .... 112  
 Pedestrian Protection System ... 77  
 Personalisation  
     Vehicle ..... 126  
 Phone  
     Apple CarPlay and  
         Android Auto ..... 168, 224  
     Bluetooth ..... 164, 219  
     Hands-Free ..... 168, 225  
 Power  
     Button ..... 243  
     Mirrors .....40

Power (cont'd)  
     Outlets .....97  
     Protection, Battery ..... 141  
     Retained Accessory (RAP) ... 245  
     Windows .....43  
 Pre-Heat Light ..... 113  
 Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts ... 66  
 Pressure  
     Tyre ..... 388

**R**

Radio  
     AM-FM (Inc. DAB) ..... 190  
     AM-FM Radio ..... 152  
 Reading Lamps ..... 140  
 Rear Floor Storage Cover ..... 82  
 Rear Fog Light ..... 114  
 Rear Fog Lights ..... 138  
 Rear Seat Armrest ..... 63  
 Rear Seats ..... 60  
     Heated .....63  
 Rear Storage ..... 81  
 Rear Vision Camera (RVC) .....268  
 Rear Window Washer/Wiper .... 95  
 Rear Windows  
     Heated .....45  
 Rearview Mirrors ..... 42

Rearview Mirrors (cont'd)	
Automatic Dimming .....	42
Recognition	
Voice .....	164, 214, 216
Recommended	
Fuel .....	310
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants .....	379
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)	
System .....	21
Remote Vehicle Start .....	25
Replacement Parts	
Airbags .....	71
Replacing Airbag System .....	71
Replacing Seat Belt System	
Parts after a Crash .....	67
Restraints	
Where to Put .....	75
Retained Accessory	
Power (RAP) .....	245
Reverse Lamps .....	138
Reverse Tilt Mirrors .....	41
Ride Control Systems .....	264
Electronic Stability (ESC) .....	264
Roof	
Sunroof .....	45
Roof Rack System .....	88
Rotation, Tyres .....	357

<b>S</b>	
Safety Locks .....	30
Sealant Kit, Tyre .....	359
Seat Belts	
Care .....	67
Child Restraints .....	76
How to Wear Seat Belts	
Properly .....	64
Reminders .....	109
Replacing after a Crash .....	67
Three-Point .....	65
Use During Pregnancy .....	66
Seats	
Adjustment, Front .....	52
Head Restraints .....	48
Heated Front .....	58
Heated, Rear .....	63
Memory .....	56
Position, Front .....	50
Rear .....	60
Seats and Restraints	
Pedestrian Protection	
System .....	77
Service .....	240
Accessories and	
Modifications .....	320
Service and Maintenance	
Service Information .....	378

Service Display .....	107
Service Electric Parking	
Brake Light .....	111
Service Information .....	378
Settings .....	170, 229
Shift Lever .....	255
Side Airbag System .....	69
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) ...	303
Side Turn Signal Lights .....	348
Signals, Turn and	
Lane-Change .....	137
Specifications and	
Capacities .....	387
Speed Limiter .....	285
Speedometer .....	104
Start Assist, Hill .....	262
Start Vehicle, Remote .....	25
Starting and Operating	
Overrun Cut-Off .....	246
Starting the Engine .....	244
Steering	
Wheel Adjustment .....	92
Wheel Controls .....	92
Storage	
Boot Cover .....	82
Rear .....	81
Vehicle .....	320

Storage Areas		Systems		Traction Control System	
Armrest .....	81	Driver Assistance .....	268	(TCS) Off Light .....	112
Cargo Cover .....	83	<b>T</b>		Trademarks and License	
Centre Console .....	81	Tachometer .....	106	Agreements .....	390
Front .....	80	Tailgate .....	31	Trailer	
Glove Box .....	79	Taillamps .....	343	Sway Control (TSC) .....	317
Information on Loading the		Technical Data		Towing .....	314
Vehicle .....	89	Tyre Pressure .....	388	Transmission	
Rear Floor Storage Cover .....	82	Temperature		Automatic .....	254
Roof Rack System .....	88	Outside .....	96	Transmission Display .....	254
Sunglasses .....	80	Text Messaging .....	221	Tread Depth .....	357
Storage Compartments .....	79	Theft-Deterrent Systems		Trip Odometer .....	105
Sun Visor Lamps .....	140	Immobiliser .....	39	Turn and Lane-Change	
Sun Visors .....	45	Thermometer		Signals .....	137
Sunglass Storage .....	80	Outside Temperature .....	96	Turn Signal .....	108
Sunroof .....	45	Three-Point Seat Belt .....	65	Tyre Pressure .....	388
Surround Vision System .....	272	Time .....	96	Tyres .....	356
Symbols .....	3	Tools .....	355	Buying New Tyres .....	358
System		Top Tether Anchor Fittings .....	76	Chains .....	359
Following Distance		Towing		Changing .....	363
Indication .....	296	Another Vehicle .....	372	Pressure .....	356
Forward Collision		Trailer .....	314	Rotation .....	357
Alert (FCA) .....	293	Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ...	317	Sealant and	
Front Pedestrian Protection ...	300	Vehicle .....	371	Compressor Kit .....	359
Interactive Drive Control .....	265	Traction		Wheel Alignment and Tyre	
Roof Rack .....	88	Control System (TCS) .....	263	Balance .....	358
Surround Vision .....	272				

**U**

- USB ..... 156, 193
- Using the Navigation System ... 198
- Using This Manual ..... 3

**V**

- Vehicle
  - Identification Number (VIN) ... 380
  - Messages ..... 124
  - Personalisation ..... 126
  - Remote Start ..... 25
  - Towing ..... 371
  - Towing Another Vehicle ..... 372
- Vehicle Ahead Indicator ..... 112
- Vehicle Care
  - Tyre Pressure ..... 356
- Vehicle Dimensions ..... 386
- Vehicle Identification
  - Labels ..... 382
- Vehicle Storage ..... 320
- Vehicle Weight ..... 383
- Ventilated Front Seats ..... 58
- Ventilation
  - Adjustable Air ..... 239
  - Fixed Air Vents ..... 239
- Visors ..... 45
- Voice Recognition .... 164, 214, 216

**W**

- Warning
  - Brake System Light ..... 110
  - Caution and Danger ..... 3
- Warning Chimes ..... 125
- Warning Light
  - AdBlue ..... 113
- Warnings
  - Hazard Flashers ..... 137
- Washer Fluid ..... 335
- Weights
  - Vehicle ..... 383
- Wheels
  - Alignment and Tyre
    - Balance ..... 358
- Where to Put the Restraint ..... 75
- Windows ..... 42
  - Heated, Rear ..... 45
  - Power ..... 43
- Windshield
  - Wiper/Washer ..... 93
- Wiper Blade Replacement ..... 338
- Wipers
  - Rear Washer ..... 95
- Wireless Charging ..... 98











